

THE SEER PROGRAM  
CODING AND STAGING MANUAL 2007

Revised September 2008

CANCER STATISTICS BRANCH  
SURVEILLANCE RESEARCH PROGRAM  
DIVISION OF CANCER CONTROL AND POPULATION SCIENCES  
NATIONAL INSTITUTES OF HEALTH  
PUBLIC HEALTH SERVICE  
US DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES

*Effective Date: Cases diagnosed January 1, 2007*

**NIH Publication Number 07-5581**  
**U.S. Department of Health and Human Services**  
**National Institutes of Health**  
**National Cancer Institute**

# The SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

## Editors

Carol Hahn Johnson, BS, CTR, SEER, NCI  
Margaret “Peggy” Adamo, RHIT, CTR, SEER, NCI

Revised September 2008

## Acknowledgements

Steven Peace, BS, CTR, Westat  
Lynn Ries, MS, SEER, NCI  
Wendy Scharber, RHIT, CTR, Registry Widgets

### **Suggested Citation:**

Johnson CH, Adamo M (eds.), SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007.  
National Cancer Institute, NIH Publication number 07-5581, Bethesda, MD 2008 revision.

### **Copyright Information**

All material in this manual is in the public domain and may be reproduced or copied without permission. We do request that you use a source citation.

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<b>Preface to the SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007</b> .....	vi
<b>Introduction SEER Program</b> .....	1
SEER Coding and Staging Manual Contents.....	1
Reportability .....	1
Dates of Diagnosis/Residency .....	1
Reportable Diagnoses .....	1
Cases Diagnosed Clinically are Reportable.....	3
Ambiguous Terminology.....	3
How to Use Ambiguous Terminology for Case Ascertainment .....	3
Changing Information on the Abstract.....	5
Determining Multiple Primaries: Solid Malignant Tumors .....	5
Determining Multiple Primaries For Solid Malignant Tumors.....	7
Determining Multiple Primaries: Hematopoietic Primaries .....	9
<b>Section I Basic Record Identification</b> .....	11
SEER Participant .....	13
Patient ID Number .....	15
Record Type.....	16
SEER Record Number .....	17
SEER Coding System -- Original .....	18
SEER Coding System -- Current .....	19
<b>Section II Information Source</b> .....	21
Type of Reporting Source.....	23
Casefinding Source .....	26
<b>Section III Demographic Information</b> .....	27
Place of Residence at Diagnosis .....	29
County.....	31
Census Tract 2000.....	32
Census Tract Certainty 2000.....	33
Place of Birth .....	35
Date of Birth .....	36
Age at Diagnosis .....	38
Race 1 .....	39

Race 2, 3, 4, 5.....	44
Race-NAPIIA.....	49
IHS Link .....	50
Spanish Surname or Origin.....	51
Computed Ethnicity .....	52
Computed Ethnicity Source .....	53
NHIA Derived Hispanic Origin .....	54
Sex .....	55
Marital Status at Diagnosis .....	56
Primary Payer at Diagnosis.....	57
<b>Section IV Description of this Neoplasm.....</b>	<b>59</b>
Date of Diagnosis.....	61
Sequence Number-Central .....	65
Primary Site .....	69
Laterality.....	73
Diagnostic Confirmation.....	76
Morphology.....	78
Histologic Type ICD-O-3 .....	79
Benign and Borderline Primary Intracranial and CNS Tumors .....	82
Hematopoietic Primaries.....	83
Behavior Code .....	84
Grade, Differentiation or Cell Indicator.....	86
Multiplicity Counter.....	90
Date of Multiple Tumors .....	92
Type of Multiple Tumors Reported as One Primary .....	93
Ambiguous Terminology .....	95
Date of Conclusive Terminology.....	98
ICD-O-2 Conversion Flag.....	99
ICD-O-3 Conversion Flag.....	100
<b>Section V Staging Information .....</b>	<b>101</b>
Collaborative Staging and Coding Instructions From Version 01.04.00.....	103
Introduction.....	103
Changes in Abstracting Rules.....	105

How the Collaborative Staging System Works.....	107
Mapping and the Computer Algorithm.....	107
Obsolete Codes.....	108
How Mapping Was Determined.....	111
General Instructions for Using the Collaborative Staging System Codes and Coding Instructions .....	112
General Guidelines .....	112
Structure and Format of Site/Histology-Specific Code Schemas .....	115
Coding “None” vs. “Unknown” in the Collaborative Staging System, TNM and Summary Stage...115	
Choosing the Correct Coding Schema for a Case.....	116
Schemas Where Tumor Size is Necessary for AJCC Staging .....	117
Schemas That Do Not Use Tumor Size for AJCC Staging.....	118
Death Certificate Only Cases.....	119
Use of Autopsy Information in Collaborative Staging .....	119
Definitions of Adjacent Tissues, Structures, and Organs .....	120
Ambiguous Terminology .....	121
Interpreting Ambiguous Terminology for Collaborative Staging .....	121
How to Code the Collaborative Staging System Data Elements .....	122
Determining Descriptive Tumor Size .....	123
Coding Instructions for Collaborative Staging Data Elements .....	124
CS Tumor Size.....	124
CS Extension.....	128
CS Tumor Size/Ext Eval.....	131
CS Lymph Nodes.....	134
CS Reg Nodes Eval.....	144
Regional Nodes Positive .....	147
Regional Nodes Examined.....	148
CS Mets at Dx.....	149
CS Mets Eval .....	151
CS Site-Specific Factor 1 .....	154
CS Site-Specific Factor 2.....	156
CS Site-Specific Factor 3 .....	158
CS Site-Specific Factor 4.....	160
CS Site-Specific Factor 5.....	162

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 .....	164
CS Derived Data Items .....	166
CS Version First.....	167
CS Version Latest .....	168
SEER Summary Stage 1977 .....	169
SEER Summary Stage 2000 .....	170
<b>Section VI First Course of Therapy .....</b>	<b>171</b>
Date Therapy Initiated .....	176
Surgery of Primary Site .....	178
Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery .....	180
Surgical Procedure of Other Site .....	182
Reason for No Surgery of Primary Site .....	183
Radiation .....	185
Radiation Sequence with Surgery .....	189
Chemotherapy .....	190
Hormone Therapy .....	193
Immunotherapy .....	195
Hematologic Transplant and Endocrine Procedures .....	198
Systemic Treatment/Surgery Sequence .....	201
Other Therapy .....	202
<b>Section VII Follow Up Information.....</b>	<b>205</b>
Date of Last Follow Up or of Death .....	207
Vital Status.....	209
ICD Code Revision Used for Cause of Death.....	210
Underlying Cause of Death.....	211
Type of Follow up.....	212
<b>Section VIII Administrative Codes .....</b>	<b>213</b>
Site/Type Interfield Review .....	215
Histology/Behavior Interfield Review .....	216
Age/Site/Histology Interfield Review.....	217
Sequence Number/Diagnostic Confirmation Interfield Review .....	218
Site/Histology/Laterality/Sequence Interrecord Review.....	219
Surgery/Diagnostic Confirmation Interfield Review .....	220

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

---

Type of Reporting Source/Sequence Number Interfield Review .....	221
Sequence Number/Ill-Defined Site Interfield Review .....	222
Leukemia or Lymphoma/Diagnostic Confirmation Interfield Review .....	223
Over-Ride Flag for Site/Behavior (IF39).....	224
Over-Ride Flag for Site/EOD/Diagnosis Date (IF40).....	225
Over-Ride Flag for Site/Laterality/EOD (IF41).....	226
Over-Ride Flag for Site/Laterality/Morphology (IF42).....	227
<b>Appendix A – County Codes</b> .....	<b>A-1</b>
<b>Appendix B – SEER Geocodes</b> .....	<b>B-1</b>
<b>Appendix C – Site-Specific Coding Modules</b> .....	<b>C-1</b>
<b>Appendix D – Race and Nationality Descriptions from the 2000 Census and Bureau of Vital Statistics</b> .....	<b>D-1</b>

**PREFACE TO THE SEER PROGRAM CODING AND STAGING MANUAL 2007**

The Surveillance, *Epidemiology and End Results (SEER) Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007* is effective for cases diagnosed January 1, 2007 and forward. Previous editions of this manual are available on the SEER website, CD, or may be ordered through the SEER website. This is a major rewrite of the manual. The SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007 includes all errata and revisions that apply to cases diagnosed January 1, 2007 and forward. The 2007 changes and additions include:

- 2007 multiple primary rules
- 2007 histology coding rules
- New data items
  - NPI Registry ID
  - Casefinding Source
  - Primary Payer at Diagnosis
  - Multiplicity Counter
  - Date of Multiple Tumors
  - Type of Multiple Tumors Reported as One Primary
  - Ambiguous Terminology
  - Date of Conclusive Terminology
  - Systemic Treatment Sequence with Surgery

All of the changes incorporated into the manual were approved by the Uniform Data Standards Committee of the North American Association of Central Cancer Registries.

This manual includes data item descriptions, codes, and coding instructions for cases diagnosed January 1, 2007 and forward. Data items not required by SEER are noted as such.

Data items that are not required for 2007 diagnoses but were collected in years prior to 2007 still must be transmitted to SEER. These data items should be blank for 2007 and forward diagnoses. Descriptions of historic data items, allowable codes, and coding rules are not in this manual but can be found in historic manuals.

SEER regions may submit technical questions to SEER using the web-based SINQ system at <http://seer.cancer.gov/seerinqury/>. The general questions and answers from the SINQ system will be incorporated into the next edition of the SEER manual.

This manual may be downloaded in electronic format from the SEER website <http://seer.cancer.gov/>.

Send suggestions or revisions to:

Carol Hahn Johnson, BS, CTR  
Manager, Quality Improvement  
Surveillance, Epidemiology and End Results Program  
Cancer Statistics Branch, Surveillance Research Program,  
Division of Cancer Control and Population Sciences  
National Cancer Institute  
6116 Executive Blvd  
Suite 504  
Bethesda, MD 20892-8316

Fax: (301) 496-9949  
Email: [johnsoca@mail.nih.gov](mailto:johnsoca@mail.nih.gov)  
SEER website: <http://seer.cancer.gov>



## INTRODUCTION SEER PROGRAM

Two programs, the End Results Group and the Third National Cancer Survey, were predecessors of the Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER) Program. SEER publishes the *SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007* to provide instructions and descriptions that are detailed enough to promote consistent abstracting and coding.

### SEER CODING AND STAGING MANUAL CONTENTS

The *SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007* explains the format and the definitions of the data items required by SEER.

**For all cases diagnosed on or after January 1, 2007, the instructions and codes in this manual take precedence over all previous instructions and codes.**

Documentation and codes for historical data items can be found in earlier versions of the SEER Program Code Manual. Earlier versions are available on CD and on the SEER website.

This coding manual does not prevent SEER contract registries or other registries that follow SEER rules from collecting additional data items useful for those regions.

### REPORTABILITY

#### DATES OF DIAGNOSIS/RESIDENCY

SEER registries are required to collect data on persons who are diagnosed with cancer who, at the time of diagnosis, are **residents** of the geographic area covered by the SEER registry. Cases diagnosed on or after January 1, **1973** are reportable to SEER. Registries that joined the SEER Program after 1973 have different reporting start dates specified in their contracts.

#### REPORTABLE DIAGNOSES

##### 1. In Situ and Malignant/Invasive Histologies

- a. All histologies with a **behavior code** of /2 or /3 in the International *Classification of Diseases for Oncology*, Third Edition (ICD-O-3).
- b. **Exceptions:** Malignant and invasive histologies **not required** by SEER
  - i. **Skin** primary (C440-C449) with any of the following histologies:
    - Malignant neoplasm (8000-8005)
    - Epithelial carcinoma (8010-8046)
    - Papillary and squamous cell carcinoma (8050-8084)
    - Basal cell carcinoma (8090-8110)
  - Note:** If the registry collects basal or squamous cell carcinoma of **skin** sites C440-C449, sequence them in the 60 range and do not report them to SEER.
  - ii. Carcinoma **in situ** of **cervix** (/2) or cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (**CIN III**) of the cervix (C530-C539) (Collection **stopped** effective with cases diagnosed 1/1/1996 and later except as required in individual contracts.)
  - iii. Prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia (**PIN III**) of the prostate (C619) (Collection **stopped** effective with cases diagnosed 1/1/2001 and later)

**2. Benign/Non-Malignant Histologies**

- a. **Pilocytic/Juvenile astrocytomas** are reportable; code the histology and behavior code 9421/3.
- b. **Benign and borderline primary intracranial and CNS tumors** with a behavior code of /0 or /1 in ICD-O-3 are collected for the following sites, **effective with cases diagnosed 1/1/2004** and later. See the table below for required sites.

**Required Sites for Benign and Borderline Primary Intracranial and Central Nervous System Tumors**

General Term	Specific Sites	ICD-O-3 Topography Code
<b>Meninges</b>	Cerebral meninges	C700
	Spinal meninges	C701
	Meninges, NOS	C709
<b>Brain</b>	Cerebrum	C710
	Frontal lobe	C711
	Temporal lobe	C712
	Parietal lobe	C713
	Occipital lobe	C714
	Ventricle, NOS	C715
	Cerebellum, NOS	C716
	Brain stem	C717
	Overlapping lesion of brain	C718
	Brain, NOS	C719
	<b>Spinal cord, cranial nerves, and other parts of the central nervous system</b>	Spinal cord
Cauda equine		C721
Olfactory nerve		C722
Optic nerve		C723
Acoustic nerve		C724
Cranial nerve, NOS		C725
Overlapping lesion of brain and central nervous system		C728
Nervous system, NOS		C729
<b>Pituitary, craniopharyngeal duct and pineal gland</b>	Pituitary gland	C751
	Craniopharyngeal duct	C752
	Pineal gland	C753

*Note:* Benign and borderline tumors of the cranial bones (C410) are **not reportable**.

## CASES DIAGNOSED CLINICALLY ARE REPORTABLE

In the absence of a histologic or cytologic confirmation of a reportable cancer, accession a case based on the **clinical diagnosis** (when a recognized medical practitioner says the patient has a cancer or carcinoma). A clinical diagnosis may be recorded in the final diagnosis on the face sheet or other parts of the medical record.

*Note:* A pathology report normally takes precedence over a clinical diagnosis. If the patient has a negative biopsy, the case would not be reported.

*Exception 1:* If the physician treats a patient for cancer in spite of the negative biopsy, accession the case.

*Exception 2:* If enough time has passed that it is reasonable to assume that the physician has seen the negative pathology, but the clinician continues to call this a reportable disease, accession the case. A reasonable amount of time would be equal to or greater than 6 months.

## AMBIGUOUS TERMINOLOGY

Ambiguous terminology may originate from any source document, such as pathology report, radiology report, or from a clinical report. The terms listed below are reportable.

**Ambiguous terms that are reportable** (used to determine reportability)

Apparent(ly)

Appears (effective with cases diagnosed 1/1/1998 and later)

Comparable with (effective with cases diagnosed 1/1/1998 and later)

Compatible with (effective with cases diagnosed 1/1/1998 and later)

Consistent with

Favor(s)

Malignant appearing (effective with cases diagnosed 1/1/1998 and later)

Most likely

Presumed

Probable

Suspect(ed)

Suspicious (for)

Typical (of)

## HOW TO USE AMBIGUOUS TERMINOLOGY FOR CASE ASCERTAINMENT

### 1. In Situ and Invasive (Behavior codes /2 and /3)

- a. If any of the reportable **ambiguous terms precede** a word that is **synonymous** with an in situ or invasive tumor (e.g.: cancer, carcinoma, malignant neoplasm, etc.), the case is reportable. Accession the case.

*Example:* The pathology report says: Prostate biopsy with markedly abnormal cells that are typical of adenocarcinoma.” Accession the case.

*Negative Example:* The final diagnosis on the outpatient report reads: Rule out leukemia. Do not accession the case.

- b. **Discrepancies:** If one section of the medical record(s) uses a reportable term such as “apparently” and another section of the medical record(s) uses a term that is not on the reportable list, accept the reportable term and accession the case.

**Exception:** Do not accession a case based only on suspicious cytology. The case is accessioned if proven by positive cytology or other diagnostic methods including a physician’s clinical diagnosis. See the data item Diagnostic Confirmation for methods of diagnosis.

**Note:** If the **word or an equivalent term does not appear** on reportable list or is not a form of a word on the reportable list, the term is not diagnostic of cancer. Do not accession the case. Forms of the word are such as: “Favored” rather than Favor(s); “appeared to be” rather than appears. Do not substitute synonyms such as “supposed” for presumed or “equal” for comparable.

- c. Use these terms when **screening** diagnoses on pathology reports, operative reports, scans, mammograms, and other diagnostic testing other than tumor markers.

**Note:** If the ambiguous diagnosis is **proven to be not reportable** by biopsy, cytology, or physician’s statement, **do not accession** the case.

**Example:** Mammogram shows calcifications suspicious for intraductal carcinoma. The biopsy of the area surrounding the calcifications is negative for malignancy. Do not accession the case.

## 2. **Benign and borderline primary intracranial and CNS tumors**

- a. Use the “Ambiguous Terms that are Reportable” list to identify benign and borderline primary intracranial and CNS tumors that are reportable.
- b. If any of the reportable **ambiguous terms precede** either the word “**tumor**” or the word “**neoplasm**,” the case is reportable. Accession the case.

**Example:** The mass on the CT scan is consistent with pituitary tumor. Accession the case.

- c. **Discrepancies:** If one section of the medical record(s) uses a reportable term such as “apparently” and another section of the medical record(s) uses a term that is not on the reportable list, accept the reportable term and accession the case.

**Exception:** Do not accession a case based only on suspicious cytology. The case is accessioned if proven by positive cytology or other diagnostic methods including a physician’s clinical diagnosis. See the data item Diagnostic Confirmation for methods of diagnosis.

**Note:** If the **word or an equivalent term does not appear** on the reportable list or is not a form of a word on the reportable list, the term is not diagnostic of cancer. Do not accession the case. Forms of the word are such as: “Favored” rather than Favor(s); “appeared to be” rather than appears. Do not substitute synonyms such as “supposed” for presumed or “equal” for comparable.

- d. Use these terms when **screening** diagnoses on pathology reports, scans, ultrasounds, and other diagnostic testing other than tumor markers.

**Note:** If the **ambiguous** diagnosis is proven to be **not reportable** by biopsy, cytology, or physician's statement, **do not accession** the case.

### CHANGING INFORMATION ON THE ABSTRACT

There are circumstances under which the information originally collected on the abstract should be changed or modified.

1. To **correct** coding or abstracting **errors** whenever identified (for example, during quality control activities).
2. **When clarifications** or **rule changes** retroactively affect data item codes.

**Example:** SEER adds codes to a data item and asks the registries to review a set of cases and update using the new codes.

3. **When better information** is available later.

**Example 1:** Consults from specialty labs, pathology report addendums or comments or other information have been added to the chart. Reports done during the diagnostic workup and placed on the chart after the registrar abstracted the information may contain valuable information. Whenever these later reports give better information about the histology, grade of tumor, primary site, etc., change the codes to reflect the better information.

**Example 2:** The primary site was recorded as unknown at the time of diagnosis. At a later date, the physician determines that the cancer is primary to the testis. Change the primary site from unknown to testis.

4. When in retrospect, the **date of diagnosis** is confirmed to be earlier than the original date abstracted.

**Example:** Patient has surgery for a benign argentaffin carcinoid (8240/1) of the sigmoid colon in May 2006. In January 2007 the patient is admitted with widespread metastasis consistent with malignant argentaffin carcinoid. The registrar accessions the malignant argentaffin carcinoid as a 2007 diagnosis. Two months later, the pathologist reviews the slides from the May 2006 surgery. The review concludes that the carcinoid diagnosed in 2006 was malignant. Change the date of diagnosis to May 2006 and histology to 8241 and the behavior code to malignant (/3).

### DETERMINING MULTIPLE PRIMARIES: SOLID MALIGNANT TUMORS

**Note:** See separate section for hematopoietic primaries and see Appendix C for benign and borderline primary intracranial and central nervous system tumors (CNS)

### EQUIVALENT OR EQUAL TERMS

Multicentric, multifocal  
Tumor, mass, lesion, neoplasm

## Definitions

**Note:** Use these terms and definitions for all reportable cases except lymphoma and leukemia primaries (M9590-9989).

**Bilateral:** Relating to the right **and** left sides of the body or of a body structure; bilaterality is not an indication of single or multiple primaries.

**Clinical Diagnosis:** A diagnosis that is not microscopically confirmed. It may be based on information from diagnostic imaging or the clinician's expertise.

**Contiguous tumor:** A single tumor that involves, invades, or bridges adjacent or connecting sites or subsites.

**Focal:** An adjective meaning limited to one specific area. A focal cancer is limited to one specific area or organ. The area may be microscopic **or** macroscopic.

**Foci:** Plural of focus.

**Focus:** A term used by pathologists to describe a group of cells that can be **seen only by a** microscope. The cells are noticeably different from the surrounding tissue either by their appearance, chemical stain, or other testing.

**Laterality:** Indication of which side of a **paired organ/site** a tumor is located. (See Paired organ/site)

**Most representative specimen:** The pathologic specimen from the surgical procedure that removed the most **tumor** tissue.

**Multicentric, multifocal, and polycentric are often used as synonyms.** The tumor has multiple centers. The foci of tumors are not contiguous.

**Multiple primaries: More than one reportable case.**

**Overlapping tumor:** The involved sites are adjacent (next to each other) and the tumor is contiguous.

**Paired organ/site:** There are two sides, one on the left side of the body and one on the right side of the body. (See Laterality)

**Recurrence:** This term has two meanings:

1. The reappearance of disease that was thought to be cured or inactive (in remission). Recurrent cancer starts from cancer cells that were not removed or destroyed by the original therapy.
2. A new occurrence of cancer arising from cells that have nothing to do with the earlier (first) cancer. A new or another occurrence, incidence, episode, or report of the same disease (cancer) in a general sense – a new occurrence of cancer.

**Single primary:** One reportable case.

**Unilateral:** Relating to one side of the body or one side of a body structure.

## DETERMINING MULTIPLE PRIMARIES FOR SOLID MALIGNANT TUMORS

**Note:** See the appropriate sections of this manual for instructions pertaining to hematopoietic primaries (lymphoma, immunoproliferative diseases, and leukemia) of any site and reportable benign or borderline intracranial or CNS tumors. The following rules do not apply to hematopoietic primaries (lymphoma, immunoproliferative diseases, and leukemia) of any site or to the reportable benign or borderline intracranial or CNS tumors.

### A. General Information

1. Use these rules to determine the number of reportable primaries. Do **not** use these rules to determine case reportability, stage, behavior, or grade.
2. The 2007 multiple primary and histology coding rules **replace all previous** multiple primary and histology coding **rules**.
3. The rules are **effective** for cases **diagnosed January 1, 2007** and after. Do not use these rules to abstract cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2007.
4. Read this section, the histology instructions, and the **site-specific Equivalent Terms and Definitions** before using the multiple primary rules.
5. The multiple primary and histology coding rules are available in **three formats**: flowchart, text, and matrix. The **rules are identical**, only the formats differ. Use the rules in the format that is easiest for you to follow.
6. **Notes** and **examples** are included with some of the rules to **highlight key points** or to add **clarity** to the rules.
7. **Do not use** a physician's statement to decide whether the patient has a recurrence of a previous cancer or a new primary. Use the multiple primary rules as written **unless a pathologist compares** the present tumor to the "original" tumor and states that this tumor is a recurrence of cancer from the previous primary.

### B. How to Use the Multiple Primary Rules

1. Use the **Multiple Primary** rules to **make a decision on the number of primary malignancies** to be abstracted for reportable solid malignant tumors.
2. Use the **site-specific rules** for the following primary sites:
  - Brain, malignant (intracranial and CNS)
  - Breast
  - Colon
  - Head and neck
  - Kidney
  - Lung
  - Malignant melanoma of the skin
  - Renal pelvis, ureter, bladder, and other urinary
3. Use the **Other Sites** rules for solid malignant tumors that occur in primary sites not covered by the site-specific rules.

4. Each module (Unknown if Single or Multiple Tumors, Single Tumor, Multiple Tumors) is an independent, complete set of coding rules. To determine which set of primary site rules to use:
  - a. When there is no tumor in the primary site, only metastatic lesions are present:
    - I. Use the primary site documented by a physician and use the multiple primary and histology coding rules for that primary site.
    - II. If no primary site is documented, code the primary site as unknown and use the general multiple primary and histology coding rules. Use the “Unknown if Single or Multiple Tumors” module to determine multiple primaries and the “Single Tumor” module for coding histology.
  - b. To choose the appropriate module (Unknown if Single or Multiple Tumors, Single Tumor, Multiple Tumors)
    - I. Use the multiple primary and histology coding rules for the primary site
    - II. Determine the number of tumors
      - i. Do not count metastatic lesions
      - ii. When the tumor is only described as multicentric or multifocal, and the number of tumors is not stated, use the “Unknown if Single or Multiple Tumors” module
      - iii. When there is a tumor or tumors with separate microscopic foci, ignore the separate microscopic foci and use the “Single Tumor” or “Multiple Tumor” modules as appropriate
      - iv. When the patient has a single tumor, use the “Single Tumor” module.
      - v. If there are multiple tumors, use the “Multiple Tumor” module.
    - III. See the Equivalent Terms and Definitions for Head and Neck for guidance in coding the primary site
    - IV. Use the primary site documented by the physician on the medical record
5. If a **single primary**, prepare **one abstract**.
6. If there are **multiple primaries**, prepare **two or more abstracts**.
7. Rules are in hierarchical order within each module (Unknown if Single or Multiple Tumors, Single Tumor, and Multiple Tumors). Use the first rule that applies and

**STOP**



**DETERMINING MULTIPLE PRIMARIES: HEMATOPOIETIC PRIMARIES  
(Lymphoma and Leukemia)**

If the physician clearly states that a hematopoietic diagnosis is a new primary, use that information. Otherwise, use the SEER table “Definitions of Single and Subsequent Primaries for Hematologic Malignancies” to determine multiple primaries. Go to <http://seer.cancer.gov/icd-o-3/> to download the SEER table in PDF format.

**This page left blank**

**SECTION I**  
**BASIC RECORD IDENTIFICATION**

The Basic Record Identification fields provide a unique identifier for individual records or a set of records for each person and tumor entered into the SEER data system. The coded identifiers protect data confidentiality.

*Note:* For San Francisco, Los Angeles, San Jose/Monterey and Greater California the patient identifier identifies a unique patient across the entire State.

The combination of the SEER Participant Number, Patient ID Number, and Record Number identifies a unique patient record or tumor.

**This page left blank**

**SEER PARTICIPANT**

**Item Length: 10**  
**NAACCR Item #: 40**  
**NAACCR Name: Registry ID**

A unique code assigned to each SEER participating registry. The number identifies the registry sending the record and what population the data are based upon.

<b>Code</b>	<b>Participant</b>	<b>Area Covered</b>	<b>Year SEER Reporting Started</b>	<b>Name</b>
0000001501	Northern California Cancer Center	5 counties	1973	San Francisco Oakland SMSA
0000001502	Connecticut Department of Public Health	Entire state	1973	Connecticut
0000001520	Karmanos Cancer Institute/Wayne State University	3 counties	1973	Metropolita Detroit
0000001521	Research Corporation of Hawaii	Entire state	1973	Hawaii
0000001522	University of Iowa	Entire state	1973	Iowa
0000001523	University of New Mexico	Entire state	1973	New Mexico
0000001525	Fred Hutchinson Cancer Research Center	13 counties	1974	Seattle-Puget Sound
0000001526	University of Utah	Entire state	1973	Utah
0000001527	Emory University	5 counties	1975	Metropolitan Atlanta
0000001529	Alaska Native	Native American population of Alaska	1984	Alaska Native
0000001531	Northern California Cancer Center	4 counties	1992	San Jose-Monterey
0000001533	University of New Mexico	Native American population of Arizona	1973	Arizona Indians
0000001535	University of Southern California	1 county	1992	Los Angeles
0000001537	Emory University	10 Counties	1978	Rural Georgia
0000001541	Public Health Institute, California	California except Los Angeles, San Francisco-Oakland, and San-Jose/Monterey	2000	Greater California
0000001542	University of Kentucky Research Foundation	Entire state	2000	Kentucky

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

---

<b>Code</b>	<b>Participant</b>	<b>Area Covered</b>	<b>Year SEER Reporting Started</b>	<b>Name</b>
0000001543	Louisiana State University HSC	Entire state	2000	Louisiana
0000001544	New Jersey Department of Health and Senior Services	Entire state	2000	New Jersey
0000001551	Cherokee Nation – Oklahoma	Native American population	1997	Cherokee Nation

**PATIENT ID NUMBER**

**Item Length: 8**  
**NAACCR Item #: 20**  
**NAACCR Name: Patient ID Number**

The participating SEER registry generates a unique number and assigns that number to one patient.

The SEER registry will assign this same number to all of the patient's subsequent tumors (records).

Enter preceding zeros if the number is less than 8 digits.

**Example:** Patient # 7034 would be entered as 00007034.

**Note:** For the state of California, the patient ID number is assigned for the entire state, not for the individual registries within the state.

**RECORD TYPE**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 10**  
**NAACCR Name: RECORD TYPE**

This is a computer generated or manually entered field that identifies the type of record that is being transmitted. A file should have records of only one type.

**Codes**

- I Incidence-only record type (nonconfidential coded data)  
Length = 1946
- C Confidential record type (incidence record plus confidential data)  
Length = 2644
- A Full case Abstract record type (incidence and confidential data plus text summaries; used for reporting to central registries)  
Length = 6694
- U Correction/Update record type (short format record used to submit corrections to data already submitted)  
Length = 850
- R Analysis/Research record type (incidence record plus appended error flags and recoded values)  
Length = 2215
- M Record Modified since previous submission to central registry (identical in format to the “A” record type)  
Length = 6694
- L Pathology Laboratory



**SEER RECORD NUMBER**

**Item Length: 2**  
**NAACCR Item #: 2190**  
**NAACCR Name: SEER Record Number**

The Record Number is a unique sequential number. The highest number for each patient identifies the number of records that have been submitted to SEER for that particular patient. This data item is helpful in record linkage.

The record number is generated by the computer system for each SEER submission. The record numbers are sequential starting with the number 01. The highest number assigned represents the total number of records submitted to SEER for that particular patient.

**Codes**

- 01 One or first of more than one record for person
- 02 Second record for the person
- .. ..
- nn Last of nn records for person

**SEER CODING SYSTEM -- ORIGINAL**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 2130**  
**NAACCR Name: SEER Coding Sys--Original**

SEER Coding System -- Original records the SEER coding system best describing the way the majority of SEER items in the record were originally coded.

**Codes**

- 0 No SEER coding
- 1 Pre-1988 SEER Coding Manuals
- 2 May 1988 SEER Coding Manual
- 3 January 1989 SEER Coding Manual
- 4 January 1992 SEER Coding Manual
- 5 January 1998 SEER Coding Manual
- 6 January 2003 SEER Coding Manual
- 7 January 2004 SEER Coding Manual
- 8 January 2007 SEER Coding Manual

**SEER CODING SYSTEM -- CURRENT**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 2120**  
**NAACCR Name: SEER Coding Sys--Current**

SEER Coding System -- Current records the SEER coding system best describing the majority of SEER items as they are in the record (after conversion).

**Codes**

- 0 No SEER coding
- 1 Pre-1988 SEER Coding Manuals
- 2 May 1988 SEER Coding Manual
- 3 January 1989 SEER Coding Manual
- 4 January 1992 SEER Coding Manual
- 5 January 1998 SEER Coding Manual
- 6 January 2003 SEER Coding Manual
- 7 January 2004 SEER Coding Manual
- 8 January 2007 SEER Coding Manual

**This page left blank**

**SECTION II  
INFORMATION SOURCE**

**This page left blank**

## TYPE OF REPORTING SOURCE

Item Length: 1

NAACCR Item #: 500

NAACCR Name: Type of Reporting Source

The Type of Reporting Source identifies the source documents that provided the best information when abstracting the case. This is not necessarily the original document that identified the case; rather, it is the source that provided the best information.

### Codes

- 1 Hospital inpatient; Managed health plans with comprehensive, unified medical records (new code definition effective with diagnosis on or after 1/1/2006)
- 2 Radiation Treatment Centers or Medical Oncology Centers (hospital-affiliated or independent) (effective with diagnosis on or after 1/1/2006)
- 3 Laboratory Only (hospital-affiliated or independent)
- 4 Physician's Office/Private Medical Practitioner (LMD)
- 5 Nursing/Convalescent Home/Hospice
- 6 Autopsy Only
- 7 Death Certificate Only
- 8 Other hospital outpatient units/surgery centers (effective with diagnosis on or after 1/1/2006)

### Definitions

#### **Managed health plan:**

- Any facility where all of the diagnostic and treatment information is maintained in one unit record.
- The abstractor is able to use the unit record when abstracting the case.

*Examples of such facilities:* HMOs or other health plan such as Kaiser, Veterans Administration, and military facilities

**Physician office:** A physician office performs examinations and tests. Some physician offices may perform limited surgical procedures.

*Note:* The category "physician's office" also includes facilities called surgery centers when those facilities cannot perform surgical procedures under general anesthesia.

**Serial record:** The office or facility stores information separately for each patient encounter (has a separate record for each encounter).

#### **Surgery center:**

- Surgery centers are equipped and staffed to perform surgical procedures under general anesthesia.
- The patient does not stay overnight.

*Note:* If the facility cannot perform surgical procedures under general anesthesia, code as physician's office.

**Unit record:** The office or facility stores information for all of a patient's encounters in one record with one record number.

**Code Definitions**

<b>Code</b>	<b>Label</b>	<b>Source Documents</b>	<b>Priority</b>
1	Hospital inpatient; Managed health plans with comprehensive, unified medical records	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hospital inpatient</li> <li>• Offices/facilities with unit record                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• HMO physician office or group</li> <li>• HMO affiliated free-standing laboratory, surgery, radiation or oncology clinic</li> </ul> </li> </ul> Includes outpatient services of HMOs and large multi-specialty physician group practices with unit records.	1
2	Radiation Treatment Centers or Medical Oncology Centers (hospital-affiliated or independent)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Facilities with serial record (not a unit record)                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Radiation treatment centers</li> <li>• Medical oncology centers (hospital affiliated or independent)</li> </ul> </li> </ul> There were no source documents from code 1.	2
3	Laboratory Only (hospital-affiliated or independent)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Laboratory with serial record (not a unit record)</li> </ul> There were no source documents from codes 1, 2, 8, or 4.	5
4	Physician's Office/Private Medical Practitioner (LMD )	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Physician's office that is NOT an HMO or large multi-specialty physician group practice.</li> </ul> There were no source documents from codes 1, 2 or 8.	4
5	Nursing/Convalescent Home/Hospice	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Nursing or convalescent home or a hospice.</li> </ul> There were no source documents from codes 1, 2, 8, 4, or 3.	6
6	Autopsy Only	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Autopsy</li> </ul> The cancer was first diagnosed on autopsy. There are no source documents from codes 1, 2, 8, 4, 3, or 5.	7
7	Death Certificate Only	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Death certificate</li> </ul> Death certificate is the only source of information; follow-back activities did not identify source documents from codes 1, 2, 8, 4, 3, 5 or 6. If another source document is subsequently identified, the Type of Reporting Source code must be changed to the appropriate code in the range of 1, 2, 8, 4, 3 or 6.	8
8	Other hospital outpatient units/surgery centers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Other hospital outpatient units/surgery centers.</li> </ul> Includes, but not limited to, outpatient surgery and nuclear medicine services. There are no source documents from codes 1 or 2.	3



### Priority Order for Assigning Type of Reporting Source

When multiple source documents are used to abstract a case, use the following priority order to assign a code for Type of Reporting Source: Codes: 1, 2, 8, 4, 3, 5, 6, 7.

*Note:* Beginning with cases diagnosed 1/1/2006, the definitions for this field have been expanded. Codes 2 and 8 were added to identify outpatient sources that were previously grouped under code 1. Laboratory reports now have priority over nursing home reports. The source facilities included in the previous code 1 (hospital inpatient and outpatient) are split between codes 1, 2, and 8.

It is recommended that no changes be made to the field for cases already existing in the central cancer registry database diagnosed prior to January 1, 2006. Conversion of the old codes would be problematic and would require extensive and time-consuming review of original source documentation.

**CASEFINDING SOURCE**

**Item Length: 2**  
**NAACCR Item #: 501**  
**NAACCR Name: Casefinding Source**

**Casefinding Source identifies the source that first identified the reportable tumor.**

The first source may differ at the hospital level and the central registry level. For example, a case may be identified at the hospital level by pathology department review (code 20). The hospital reports the case to the central registry. The central registry will code the Casefinding Source as Reporting Hospital, NOS (10) if this is the first source of identification of the reportable tumor.

**Codes**

- 10 Reporting Hospital, NOS
- 20 Pathology Department Review (Surgical pathology reports, autopsies, or cytology reports)
- 21 Daily Discharge Review (daily screening of charts of discharged patients in the medical records department)
- 22 Disease Index Review (review of disease index in the medical record department)
- 23 Radiation Therapy Department/Center
- 24 Laboratory Reports (Other than pathology reports which are coded 20)
- 25 Outpatient Chemotherapy
- 26 Diagnostic Imaging/Radiology (other than radiation therapy, code 23) includes nuclear medicine
- 27 Tumor Board
- 28 Hospital Rehabilitation Service or Clinic
- 29 Other Hospital Source (including clinic, NOS or outpatient department, NOS)
- 30 Physician-Initiated Case
- 40 Consultation-only or Pathology-only Report (not abstracted by reporting hospital)
- 50 Independent (non-hospital) Pathology-Laboratory Report
- 60 Nursing Home-Initiated Case
- 70 Coroner's Office Records Review
- 75 Managed Care Organization (MCO) or Insurance Records
- 80 Death Certificate (case identified through death clearance)
- 85 Out-of-State Case Sharing
- 90 Other Non-Reporting Hospital Source
- 95 Quality Control Review (Case initially identified through quality control activities such as casefinding audit of a regional or central registry)
- 99 Unknown

**SECTION III  
DEMOGRAPHIC INFORMATION**

This page left blank

## PLACE OF RESIDENCE AT DIAGNOSIS

SEER registries collect information on place of residence at diagnosis. This information is not transmitted to SEER. The SEER rules for determining residency at diagnosis are either identical or comparable to rules used by the US Census Bureau, to ensure comparability of definitions of cases (numerator) and the population at risk (denominator).

### Coding Priorities/Sources

1. Code the **street address** of usual residence as stated by the patient. Definition: US Census Bureau Instructions: “The place where he or she lives and sleeps most of the time or the place the person says is his or her usual home.” The residency rules of departments of vital statistics may differ from those of the US Census Bureau/SEER.
2. A **post office box** is not a reliable source to identify the residency at diagnosis. Post office box addresses do not provide accurate geographical information for analyzing cancer incidence. Use the post office box address only if no street address information is available after follow-back.
3. Use residency information from a **death certificate** only when the residency from other sources is coded as unknown. Review each case carefully and apply the US Census Bureau/SEER rules for determining residence. The death certificate may give the person’s previous home address rather than the nursing home address as the place of residence; use the nursing home address as the place of residence.
4. Do not use **legal status** or **citizenship** to code residence.

### Persons with More than One Residence

1. Code the residence where the patient spends the majority of time (usual residence).
2. If the usual residence is not known or the information is not available, code the residence the patient specifies at the time of diagnosis.

*Examples:* Snowbirds who live in the south for the winter months, sunbirds who live in the north during the summer months, people with vacation residences that they occupy for a portion of the year.

### Persons with No Usual Residence

Homeless people and transients are examples of persons with no usual residence. Code the patient’s residence at the time of diagnosis such as the shelter or the hospital where diagnosis was confirmed.

### Temporary Residents of SEER Area

Code the place of usual residence rather than the temporary address for:

**Migrant** workers

**Educators** temporarily assigned to a university in the SEER area

Persons **temporarily residing** with family during cancer treatment

**Military** personnel on **temporary** duty assignments (TDY)

**Boarding school** students below college level (code the parent’s residence)

Code the residence where the student is living while attending **college**.

Code the address of the institution for **Persons in Institutions.**

*US Census Bureau definition:* “Persons under formally authorized, supervised care or custody” are residents of the institution.”

Persons who are incarcerated

Persons who are physically handicapped, mentally retarded, or mentally ill who are residents of homes, schools, hospitals or wards

Residents of nursing, convalescent, and rest homes

Long-term residents of other hospitals such as Veteran’s Administration (VA) hospitals

**Persons in the Armed Forces and on Maritime Ships (Merchant Marine)**

**Armed Forces**

For military personnel and their family members, code the address of the military installation or surrounding community as stated by the patient.

**Personnel Assigned to Navy, Coast Guard, and Maritime Ships**

The US Census Bureau has detailed rules for determining residency for personnel assigned to these ships. The rules refer to the ship’s deployment, port of departure, destination, and its homeport. Refer to US Census Bureau Publications for detailed rules: <http://www.census.gov>

**COUNTY**

**Item Length: 3**  
**NAACCR Item #: 90**  
**NAACCR Name: County at DX**

Codes for county of residence for each SEER area are listed in Appendix A.

Use code 999 when it is known that a person is a resident of a particular SEER region, but the exact county is not known.

**CENSUS TRACT 2000**

**Item Length: 6**  
**NAACCR Item #: 130**  
**NAACCR Name: Census Tract 2000**

Census Tract 2000 records the census tract of a patient's residence at the time of diagnosis. The codes are the same codes used by the US Census Bureau for the Year 2000 census. This item is coded for cases diagnosed January 1, 1996 and forward. This field allows a central registry to add year 2000 Census tracts to cases diagnosed in previous years without losing the codes in the field Census Tract 1970/80/90 which is only collected historically.

A Census tract is a small statistical subdivision of a county that, in general, has between 2,500 and 8,000 residents. Local committees and the US Census Bureau establish census tract boundaries and try to keep the same boundaries from census to census to maintain historical comparability, though this is not always possible. When populations increase or decrease, old tracts may be subdivided, disappear, or have their boundaries changed. Because the census tracts do change, it is important to know which census tract definition is used to code them.

**Codes**

Census tract codes 000100-999998

**Special Codes**

000000	Area not census tracted
999999	Area census-tracted, but census tract is not available
Blank	Census Tract 2000 not coded

**Coding Instructions**

1. Code the Census tract of the patient's residence at the time of diagnosis.
2. Assign code 999999 when an area does have an assigned Census tract but the Census tract is not available.
3. Census tracts are identified by four-digit numbers ranging from 0001 to 9989 and a two-digit suffix.
4. Right justify the first four digits and zero fill to the left. Add the suffix as the fifth and sixth digits if it exists, otherwise use 00 so all six positions are coded.

*Example 1:* Code Census tract 516 and suffix 21 to 051621

*Example 2:* Census tract 409 and suffix does not exist should be coded 040900

5. Census tract codes should be assigned based on a computer match (geocoding software).



**CENSUS TRACT CERTAINTY 2000**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 365**  
**NAACCR Name: Census Tr Certainty 2000**

Census tract certainty records the basis on which the 2000 census tract was assigned for an individual record. Most of the time, this information is provided by a geocoding vendor service. Central registry staff should codes this field manually when geocoding is not available through a vendor service. This item is coded for cases diagnosed January 1, 1996 and forward.

**Codes**

- 1 Census tract based on complete and valid street address of residence
- 2 Census tract based on residence ZIP + 4
- 3 Census tract based on residence ZIP + 2
- 4 Census tract based on residence ZIP code only
- 5 Census tract based on ZIP code of post office box
- 6 Census tract/BNA based on residence city where city has only one census tract, or based on residence ZIP code where ZIP code has only one census tract
- 9 Unable to assign census tract based on available information
- Blank Not applicable (e.g., census tracting not attempted); Census tract Certainty information for 2000 not coded

**Coding Priority**

The codes are hierarchical with the numerically lower codes having priority.

- 1. Code 1 has priority over codes 2-5 and 9
- 2. Code 2 has priority over codes 3-5 and 9
- 3. Code 3 has priority over codes 4, 5, and 9
- 4. Code 4 has priority over codes 5 and 9
- 5. Code 5 has priority over code 9

**Note:** Codes 1-5 and 9 are usually assigned by a geocoding vendor, while code 6 is usually assigned through a special effort by the central registry.

**Coding Instructions**

- 1. Code 1
  - a. Used when the census tract is assigned with certainty based on street address
  - b. May be assigned based on a computer match (geocoding software)
  - c. May be assigned based on a central registry's manual coding system

**Example 1:** The registry used a complete and valid street address to assign the census tract.

**Example 2:** The registry used a rural route number to assign the census tract, and has confirmed that the rural route lies completely within a single census tract.

**Example 3:** The registry used an incomplete street address to assign the census tract, and has confirmed that the entire street lies within a single census tract.

2. Codes 2-5

- a. Assign when there is some uncertainty about the census tract assignment
- b. May be assigned based on a computer match (geocoding software)
- c. May be assigned based on a central registry manually appointed code
- d. Assign code 4 when
  - i. Street address is incomplete or invalid, but ZIP code is known
  - ii. Only rural route number is available, but ZIP code is known
- e. Assign code 5 when the registry used a post office box and ZIP code to code the census tract

3. Code 9

- a. ZIP code is missing OR
- b. The complete address of the patient is unknown or cannot be determined OR
- c. There is insufficient information to assign a census code.

**Note:** Avoid using the post office box mailing address to code the census tract whenever possible.

**PLACE OF BIRTH**

**Item Length: 3**  
**NAACCR Item #: 250**  
**NAACCR Name: Birthplace**

The numeric and alphabetic lists of birthplaces and corresponding geocodes are provided in Appendix B of this manual.

SEER Geocodes were originally assigned during the 1970's. Since that time, many countries and islands have been given their independence or control has been turned over to another country. To maintain consistency over time, SEER has maintained the original code for these countries and islands. The names have been annotated to display the current political designation.

**Special Codes**

000 United States, NOS  
998 Non-United States, NOS  
999 Unknown

**Coding Instructions**

Assign the most specific code possible from Appendix B.

**DATE OF BIRTH**

**Item Length: 8**  
**NAACCR Item #: 240**  
**NAACCR Name: Birth Date**

Date of Birth identifies the month, day and year of the patient's birth. Date fields are recorded in the month, day, century, year format (MMDDCCYY) with 99 for unknown day or month and 9999 for unknown year.

Most SEER registries collect the month, day, and year of birth. The third and fourth digits (day) are recoded to 99 when the data are transmitted to SEER.

**Codes for Month**

- 01 January
- 02 February
- 03 March
- 04 April
- 05 May
- 06 June
- 07 July
- 08 August
- 09 September
- 10 October
- 11 November
- 12 December
- 99 Unknown month

**Codes for Day**

- 01
- 02
- 03
- ..
- ..
- 31
- 99 Unknown day

**Codes for Year**

Code the four-digit year of birth  
Record 9999 for unknown year

**Special Codes**

- 99999999 Unknown date

**Coding Instructions**

1. Code the Date of Birth
2. If the Date of **Birth** is **unknown**, but the **Age** at Diagnosis and Date of **Diagnosis** are **known**:
  - a. Record the month as 99 (unknown) and day as 99 (unknown).
  - b. Calculate the year of birth by subtracting the patient's age at diagnosis from the year of diagnosis.

*Note:* A zero must precede a single-digit month and a single-digit day

**AGE AT DIAGNOSIS**

**Item Length: 3**  
**NAACCR Item #: 230**  
**NAACCR Name: Age at Diagnosis**

This data item represents the age of the patient at diagnosis **for this cancer**.

**Codes**

000 Less than one year old  
001 One year old, but less than two years old  
002 Two years old  
...  
... (Actual age in years)  
...  
101 One hundred one years old  
...  
120 One hundred twenty years old  
999 Unknown age

**Coding Instructions**

1. **Measure** the patient's age in **completed years** of life, i.e., age at the patient's **last** birthday.
2. Generally, the registry software program calculates the Age at Diagnosis using the Date of Birth and Date of Diagnosis.
3. Age at Diagnosis can be manually calculated using the date of birth and the date of diagnosis.

**RACE 1**

**Item Length: 2**  
**NAACCR Item #: 160**  
**NAACCR Name: Race 1**

Race (and ethnicity) is defined by specific physical, hereditary and cultural traditions or origins, not necessarily by birthplace, place of residence, or citizenship. 'Origin' is defined by the US Census Bureau as the heritage, nationality group, lineage, or in some cases, the country of birth of the person or the person's parents or ancestors before their arrival in the United States.

All resources in the facility, including the medical record, face sheet, physician and nursing notes, photographs, and any other sources, must be used to determine race. If a facility does not print race in the medical record but does maintain it in electronic form, the electronic data must also be reviewed.

Recommendation: document how the race code was determined in a text field.

The data item Race 1 identifies the primary race of the patient.

**Codes**

- 01 White
- 02 Black
- 03 American Indian, Aleutian, Alaskan Native or Eskimo (includes all indigenous populations of the western hemisphere)
- 04 Chinese
- 05 Japanese
- 06 Filipino
- 07 Hawaiian
- 08 Korean (Effective with 1/1/1988 dx)
- 09 Asian Indian, Pakistani (Effective with 1/1/1988 dx)
- 10 Vietnamese (Effective with 1/1/1988 dx)
- 11 Laotian (Effective with 1/1/1988 dx)
- 12 Hmong (Effective with 1/1/1988 dx)
- 13 Kampuchean (including Khmer and Cambodian) (Effective with 1/1/1988 dx)
- 14 Thai (Effective with 1/1/1994 dx)
- 20 Micronesian, NOS (Effective with 1/1/1991)
- 21 Chamorran (Effective with 1/1/1991 dx)
- 22 Guamanian, NOS (Effective with 1/1/1991 dx)
- 25 Polynesian, NOS (Effective with 1/1/1991 dx)
- 26 Tahitian (Effective with 1/1/1991 dx)
- 27 Samoan (Effective with 1/1/1991 dx)
- 28 Tongan (Effective with 1/1/1991 dx)
- 30 Melanesian, NOS (Effective with 1/1/1991 dx)
- 31 Fiji Islander (Effective with 1/1/1991 dx)
- 32 New Guinean (Effective with 1/1/1991 dx)
- 96 Other Asian, including Asian, NOS and Oriental, NOS (Effective with 1/1/1991 dx)
- 97 Pacific Islander, NOS (Effective with 1/1/1991 dx)
- 98 Other
- 99 Unknown

SEER Participants San Francisco, San Jose-Monterey, and Los Angeles are permitted to use codes 14 and 20-97 for cases diagnosed after January 1, 1987. Greater California is permitted to use codes 14 and 20-97 for cases diagnosed after January 1, 1988. Other SEER participants may choose to recode cases diagnosed prior to 1991 using 14 and 20-97 if all cases in the following race codes are reviewed: 96 Other Asian; 97 Pacific Islander, NOS; 98 Other; and 99 unknown.

### Coding Instructions

1. Code the primary race(s) of the patient in fields Race 1, Race 2, Race 3, Race 4, and Race 5. The five race fields allow for the coding of multiple races consistent with the Census 2000. Rules 2 - 8 further specify how to code Race 1, Race 2, Race 3, Race 4 and Race 5. See Editing Guidelines below for further instructions.
2. If a person's race is a combination of white and any other race(s), code the appropriate other race(s) first and code white in the next race field.
3. If a person's race is a combination of Hawaiian and any other race(s), code Race 1 as 07 Hawaiian and code the other races in Race 2, Race 3, Race 4, and Race 5 as appropriate.

**Example:** Patient is described as Japanese and Hawaiian. Code Race 1 as 07 Hawaiian, Race 2 as 05 Japanese, and Race 3 through Race 5 as 88.

4. If the person is not Hawaiian, code Race 1 to the first stated non-white race (02-98).

**Example:** Patient is stated to be Vietnamese and Black. Code Race 1 as 10 Vietnamese, Race 2 as 02 Black, and Race 3 through Race 5 as 88.

**Note:** in the following scenarios, only the race code referred to in the example is coded. For cases diagnosed after January 1, 2000, all race fields must be coded.

5. The fields Place of Birth, Race, Marital Status, Name, Maiden Name, and Hispanic Origin are inter-related. Use the following guidelines in priority order:
  - a. Code the patient's stated race, if possible. Refer to Appendix "Race and Nationality Descriptions from the 2000 Census and Bureau of Vital Statistics" for guidance.

**Example 1:** Patient is stated to be Japanese. Code as 05 Japanese.

**Example 2:** Patient is stated to be German-Irish. Code as 01 White.

**Example 3:** Patient is described as Arabian. Code as 01 White.

**Exception:** When the race is recorded as Oriental, Mongolian, or Asian (coded to 96 Other Asian) and the place of birth is recorded as China, Japan, the Philippines, or another Asian nation, code the race based on birthplace information.

**Example 4:** The person's race is recorded as Asian and the place of birth is recorded as Japan. Code race as 05 Japanese because it is more specific than 96 Asian, NOS.

**Example 5:** The person describes himself as an Asian-American born in Laos. Code race as 11 Laotian because it is more specific than 96 Asian, NOS.



6. If the patient's race is determined on the basis of the races of relatives, there is no priority to coding race, other than to list the non-white race(s) first.

**Example:** The patient is described as Asian-American with Korean parents. Code race as 08 Korean because it is more specific than 96 Asian [-American].

7. If no race is stated in the medical record, or if the stated race cannot be coded, review the documentation for a statement of a race category.

**Example 1:** Patient described as a black female. Code as 02 Black.

**Example 2:** Patient describes herself as multi-racial (nothing more specific) and nursing notes say "African-American." Code as 02 Black.

**Example 3:** Patient states she has a Polynesian mother and Tahitian father. Code Race 1 as 25 Polynesian, Race 2 as 26 Tahitian and Race 3 through Race 5 as 88.

8. If race is unknown or not stated in the medical record and birth place is recorded, in some cases race may be inferred from the nationality. Refer to the Appendix entitled "Race and Nationality Descriptions from the 2000 Census and Bureau of Vital Statistics" to identify nationalities from which race codes may be inferred.

**Example 1:** Record states: "this native of Portugal..." Code race as 01 White per the Appendix.

**Example 2:** Record states: "this patient was Nigerian..." Code race as 02 Black per the Appendix.

**Exception:** If the patient's name is incongruous with the race inferred on the basis of nationality, code Race 1 through Race 5 as 99, Unknown.

**Example 1:** Patient's name is Siddhartha Rao and birthplace is listed as England. Code Race 1 through Race 5 as 99 Unknown.

**Example 2:** Patient's name is Ping Chen and birthplace is Ethiopia. Code Race 1 through Race 5 as 99 Unknown.

9. Use of patient name in determining race:
  - a. Do not code race from name alone, especially for females with no maiden name given.
  - b. In general, a name may be an indicator of a racial group, but should not be taken as the only indicator of race.
  - c. A patient name may be used to identify a more specific race code.

**Example 1:** Race reported as Asian, name is Hatsu Mashimoto. Code race as 05 Japanese.

**Example 2:** Birthplace is reported as Guatemala and name is Jose Chuicol [name is identified as Mayan]. Code race as 03 Native American.

- d. A patient name may be used to infer Spanish ethnicity or place of birth, but a Spanish name alone (without a statement about race or place of birth) cannot be used to determine the race code. Refer to ethnicity guidelines for further information.

**Example:** Alice Gomez is a native of Indiana (implied birthplace: United States). Code Race 1 through Race 5 as 99 Unknown, because nothing is known about her race.

10. Persons of Spanish or Hispanic origin may be of any race, although persons of Mexican, Central American, South American, Puerto Rican, or Cuban origin are usually white. Do NOT code a patient stated to be Hispanic or Latino as 98 Other Race in Race 1 and 88 in Race 2 through Race 5.

**Example:** Sabrina Fitzsimmons is a native of Brazil. Code race as 01 White per Appendix.

11. When the race is recorded as Negro or African-American, code race as 02 Black.
12. Code 03 should be used for any person stated to be Native American or [western hemisphere] Indian, whether from North, Central, South, or Latin America. For Central, South, or Latin American Indians, see additional ethnicity coding guidelines under Spanish Surname or Origin.
13. Death certificate information may be used to supplement antemortem race information only when race is coded unknown in the patient record or when the death certificate information is more specific

**Example 1:** In the cancer record Race 1 through Race 5 are coded as 99 Unknown. The death certificate states race as black. Change cancer record for Race 1 to 02 Black and Race 2 through Race 5 to 88.

**Example 2:** Race 1 is coded in the cancer record as 96 Asian. Death certificate gives birthplace as China. Change Race 1 in the cancer record to 04 Chinese and code Race 2 through Race 5 as 88.

14. Code as white (01) when the race is described as white (01) but the place of birth is Hawaii.

## EDITING GUIDELINES

All tumors for the same patient should have the same race code(s).

### *Cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2000:*

For cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2000, Race 2 through Race 5 must be blank **unless** the patient has multiple records and at least one primary is diagnosed on or after January 1, 2000. In this case, the race codes must be identical on each record.

### *Cases diagnosed on or after January 1, 2000:*

1. If only one race is reported for the person, use code 88 for the remaining race fields (Race 2 - Race 5).
2. If the patient is multiracial, code all races using items Race 1 through Race 5.
3. If any race code is 99 Unknown, then all race codes must be 99 Unknown.

4. If Race 1 is 01-98, Race 2 through Race 5 cannot be 99.
5. If more than Race 1 is coded, and if any Race 2 through Race 5 is 88, then all subsequent race codes must be 88.
6. A unique race code (other than 88, 99 or blank {for diagnoses prior to 01/01/2000}) can be coded only once in Race 1 through Race 5. For example, do not code 01 White in Race 1 for one parent and 01 White in Race 2 for the other parent.
7. Document the specified race in a remarks field when any of the race fields are coded as 96 Other Asian, 97 Pacific Islander, NOS or 98 Other Race and a more specific race is given that is not included in the list of race codes. If there is no information on race in the medical record, document that there is no race information in a remarks field. If the information in the medical record is not consistent (for example, if the patient is identified as black in nursing notes and white in a dictated physical exam), document why the coded race was chosen.

**Note:** Do not code 96 Other Asian in a subsequent race field if a specific Asian race(s) has already been coded.

**Example 1:** Patient is described as Asian in a consult note and as second generation Korean American in the history. Code Race 1 as 08 Korean and Race 2 through Race 5 as 88.

## HISTORY

1. Race 1 is the field used to compare with race data on cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2000.
2. For cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2000, Race 2 through Race 5 must be blank unless the patient has multiple records with at least one primary diagnosed on or after January 1, 2000. In this case, the race codes must be identical on each record.
3. Codes 08 - 13 became effective with diagnoses on or after January 1, 1988.
4. Code 14 became effective with diagnoses on or after January 1, 1994.
5. Codes 20 - 97 became effective with diagnoses on or after January 1, 1991. SEER participants in San Francisco, San Jose-Monterey, and Los Angeles are permitted to use codes 14 and 20 - 97 for cases diagnosed after January 1, 1987; Greater California is permitted to use codes 14 and 20-97 for cases diagnosed after January 1, 1988. Other SEER participants may choose to recode cases diagnosed prior to 1991 using 14 and 20-97 if all cases in the following race codes are reviewed: 96 Other Asian; 97 Pacific Islander, NOS; 98 Other; and 99 unknown.

**RACE 2, 3, 4, 5**

**Item Length: 2**  
**NAACCR Item #: 161, 162, 163, 164**  
**NAACCR Name: Race 2, Race 3, Race 4, Race 5**

Race (and ethnicity) is defined by specific physical, heredity and cultural traditions or origins, not necessarily by birthplace, place of residence, or citizenship. 'Origin' is defined by the US Census Bureau as the heritage, nationality group, lineage, or in some cases, the country of birth of the person or the person's parents or ancestors before their arrival in the United States.

All resources in the facility, including the medical record, face sheet, physician and nursing notes, photographs, and any other sources, must be used to determine race. If a facility does not print race in the medical record but does maintain it in electronic form, the electronic data must also be reviewed.

Recommendation: document how the race code was determined in a text field.

The data item Race identifies the primary race of the patient.

**Codes**

- 01 White
- 02 Black
- 03 American Indian, Aleutian, Alaskan Native or Eskimo (includes all indigenous populations of the Western hemisphere)
- 04 Chinese
- 05 Japanese
- 06 Filipino
- 07 Hawaiian
- 08 Korean (Effective with 1/1/1988 dx)
- 09 Asian Indian, Pakistani (Effective with 1/1/1988 dx)
- 10 Vietnamese (Effective with 1/1/1988 dx)
- 11 Laotian (Effective with 1/1/1988 dx)
- 12 Hmong (Effective with 1/1/1988 dx)
- 13 Kampuchean (including Khmer and Cambodian) (Effective with 1/1/1988 dx)
- 14 Thai (Effective with 1/1/1994 dx)
- 20 Micronesian, NOS (Effective with 1/1/1991)
- 21 Chamorran (Effective with 1/1/1991 dx)
- 22 Guamanian, NOS (Effective with 1/1/1991 dx)
- 25 Polynesian, NOS (Effective with 1/1/1991 dx)
- 26 Tahitian (Effective with 1/1/1991 dx)
- 27 Samoan (Effective with 1/1/1991 dx)
- 28 Tongan (Effective with 1/1/1991 dx)
- 30 Melanesian, NOS (Effective with 1/1/1991 dx)
- 31 Fiji Islander (Effective with 1/1/1991 dx)
- 32 New Guinean (Effective with 1/1/1991 dx)
- 88 No further race documented
- 96 Other Asian, including Asian, NOS and Oriental, NOS (Effective with 1/1/1991 dx)
- 97 Pacific Islander, NOS (Effective with 1/1/1991 dx)
- 98 Other
- 99 Unknown

SEER Participants San Francisco, San Jose-Monterey, and Los Angeles are permitted to use codes 14 and 20-97 for cases diagnosed after January 1, 1987. Greater California is permitted to use codes 14 and 20-97 for cases diagnosed after January 1, 1988. Other SEER participants may choose to recode cases diagnosed prior to 1991 using 14 and 20-97 if all cases in the following race codes are reviewed: 96 Other Asian; 97 Pacific Islander, NOS; 98 Other; and 99 unknown.

### Coding Instructions

1. Code the primary race(s) of the patient in fields Race 1, Race 2, Race 3, Race 4, and Race 5. The five race fields allow for the coding of multiple races consistent with the Census 2000. Rules 2 - 8 further specify how to code Race 1, Race 2, Race 3, Race 4 and Race 5. See Editing Guidelines below for further instructions.
2. If a person's race is a combination of white and any other race(s), code the appropriate other race(s) first and code white in the next race field.
3. If a person's race is a combination of Hawaiian and any other race(s), code Race 1 as 07 Hawaiian and code the other races in Race 2, Race 3, Race 4, and Race 5 as appropriate.

**Example:** Patient is described as Japanese and Hawaiian. Code Race 1 as 07 Hawaiian, Race 2 as 05 Japanese, and Race 3 through Race 5 as 88.

4. If the person is not Hawaiian, code Race 1 to the first stated non-white race (02 - 98).

**Example:** Patient is stated to be Vietnamese and Black. Code Race 1 as 10 Vietnamese, Race 2 as 02 Black, and Race 3 through Race 5 as 88.

**Note:** in the following scenarios, only the race code referred to in the example is coded. For cases diagnosed after January 1, 2000, all race fields must be coded.

5. The fields Place of Birth, Race, Marital Status, Name, Maiden Name, and Hispanic Origin are inter-related. Use the following guidelines in priority order:
  - a. Code the patient's stated race, if possible. Refer to Appendix "Race and Nationality Descriptions from the 2000 Census and Bureau of Vital Statistics" for guidance.

**Example 1:** Patient is stated to be Japanese. Code as 05 Japanese.

**Example 2:** Patient is stated to be German-Irish. Code as 01 White.

**Example 3:** Patient is described as Arabian. Code as 01 White.

**Exception:** When the race is recorded as Oriental, Mongolian, or Asian (coded to 96 Other Asian) and the place of birth is recorded as China, Japan, the Philippines, or another Asian nation, code the race based on birthplace information.

**Example 4:** The person's race is recorded as Asian and the place of birth is recorded as Japan. Code race as 05 Japanese because it is more specific than 96 Asian, NOS.

**Example 5:** The person describes himself as an Asian-American born in Laos. Code race as 11 Laotian because it is more specific than 96 Asian, NOS.

6. If the patient's race is determined on the basis of the races of relatives, there is no priority to coding race, other than to list the non-white race(s) first.

**Example:** The patient is described as Asian-American with Korean parents. Code race as 08 Korean because it is more specific than 96 Asian [-American].

7. If no race is stated in the medical record, or if the stated race cannot be coded, review the documentation for a statement of a race category.

**Example 1:** Patient described as a black female. Code as 02 Black.

**Example 2:** Patient describes herself as multi-racial (nothing more specific) and nursing notes say "African-American." Code as 02 Black.

**Example 3:** Patient states she has a Polynesian mother and Tahitian father. Code Race 1 as 25 Polynesian, Race 2 as 26 Tahitian and Race 3 through Race 5 as 88.

8. If race is unknown or not stated in the medical record and birth place is recorded, in some cases race may be inferred from the nationality. Refer to the Appendix entitled "Race and Nationality Descriptions from the 2000 Census and Bureau of Vital Statistics" to identify nationalities from which race codes may be inferred.

**Example 1:** Record states: "this native of Portugal..." Code race as 01 White per the Appendix.

**Example 2:** Record states: "this patient was Nigerian..." Code race as 02 Black per the Appendix.

**Exception:** If the patient's name is incongruous with the inferred race, code Race 1 through Race 5 as 99, Unknown.

**Example 1:** Patient's name is Siddhartha Rao and birthplace is listed as England. Code Race 1 through Race 5 as 99 Unknown.

**Example 2:** Patient's name is Ping Chen and birthplace is Ethiopia. Code Race 1 through Race 5 as 99 Unknown.

9. Use of patient name in determining race
  - a. Do not code race from name alone, especially for females with no maiden name given.
  - b. In general, a name may be an indicator of a racial group, but should not be taken as the only indicator of race.
  - c. A patient name may be used to identify a more specific race code.

**Example 1:** Race reported as Asian, name is Hatsu Mashimoto. Code race as 05 Japanese.

**Example 2:** Birthplace is reported as Guatemala and name is Jose Chuicol [name is identified as Mayan]. Code race as 03 Native American

- d. A patient name may be used to infer Spanish ethnicity or place of birth, but a Spanish name alone (without a statement about race or place of birth) cannot be used to determine the race code. Refer to ethnicity guidelines for further information.

**Example:** Alice Gomez is a native of Indiana (implied birthplace: United States). Code Race 1 through Race 5 as 99 Unknown, because we know nothing about her race.

10. Persons of Spanish or Hispanic origin may be of any race, although persons of Mexican, Central American, South American, Puerto Rican, or Cuban origin are usually white. Do NOT code a patient stated to be Hispanic or Latino as 98 Other Race in Race 1 and 88 in Race 2 through Race 5.

**Example:** Miss Sabrina Fitzsimmons is a native of Chile. Code race as 01 White per Appendix.

11. When the race is recorded as Negro or African-American, code race as 02.
12. Code 03 should be used for any person stated to be Native American or [western hemisphere] Indian, whether from North, Central, South, or Latin America. See additional ethnicity coding guidelines under Spanish Surname or Origin for instructions on coding Central, South, or Latin American Indians.
13. Death certificate information may be used to supplement antemortem race information only when race is coded unknown in the patient record or when the death certificate information is more specific.

**Example 1:** In the cancer record Race 1 through Race 5 are coded as 99 Unknown. The death certificate states race as black. Change cancer record for Race 1 to 02 Black and Race 2 through Race 5 to 88.

**Example 2:** Race 1 is coded in the cancer record as 96 Asian. Death certificate gives birthplace as China. Change Race 1 in the cancer record to 04 Chinese and code Race 2 through Race 5 as 88.

14. Code as white (01) when the race is described as white (01) but the place of birth is Hawaii.

## EDITING GUIDELINES

All tumors for the same patient should have the same race code(s).

### *Cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2000:*

For cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2000, Race 2 through Race 5 must be blank **unless** the patient has multiple records and at least one primary is diagnosed on or after January 1, 2000. In this case, the race codes must be identical on each record.

### *Cases diagnosed on or after January 1, 2000:*

1. If only one race is reported for the person, use code 88 for the remaining race fields (Race 2 - Race 5).
2. If the patient is multiracial, code all races using items Race 1 through Race 5.

3. If any race code is 99 Unknown, then all race codes must be 99 Unknown. If Race 1 is 01-98, Race 2 through Race 5 cannot be 99.
4. If more than Race 1 is coded, and if any Race 2 through Race 5 is 88, then all subsequent race codes must be 88.
5. A unique race code (other than 88, 99 or blank {for diagnoses prior to 01/01/2000}) can be coded only once in Race 1 through Race 5. For example, do not code 01 White in Race 1 for one parent and 01 White in Race 2 for the other parent.
6. Document the specified race in a remarks field when any of the race fields are coded as 96 Other Asian, 97 Pacific Islander, NOS or 98 Other Race and a more specific race is given that is not included in the list of race codes. If there is no information on race in the medical record, document that there is no race information in a remarks field. If the information in the medical record is not consistent (for example, if the patient is identified as black in nursing notes and white in a dictated physical exam), document why the coded race was chosen.

**Note:** Do not code 96 Asian in a subsequent race field if a specific Asian race(s) has already been coded.

**Example 1:** Patient is described as Asian in a consult note and as second generation Korean American in the history. Code Race 1 as 08 Korean and Race 2 through Race 5 as 88.

**Example 2:** Patient is described as having one Thai parent and one Malaysian parent. Code Race 1 as 14 Thai, Race 2 as 96 Other Asian (where Malaysian is coded), and Race 3 through Race 5 as 88.

## HISTORY

1. Race 1 is the field used to compare with race data on cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2000.
2. For cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2000, Race 2 through Race 5 must be blank **unless** the patient has multiple records and at least one primary is diagnosed on or after January 1, 2000. In this case, the race codes must be identical on each record.
3. Codes 08 - 13 became effective with diagnoses on or after January 1, 1988.
4. Code 14 became effective with diagnoses on or after January 1, 1994.
5. Codes 20 - 97 became effective with diagnoses on or after January 1, 1991. SEER participants in San Francisco, San Jose-Monterey, and Los Angeles are permitted to use codes 14 and 20 - 97 for cases diagnosed after January 1, 1987. Other SEER participants may choose to recode cases diagnosed prior to 1991 using 14 and 20-97 if all cases in the following race codes are reviewed: 96 Other Asian; 97 Pacific Islander, NOS; 98 Other; and 99 unknown.



**RACE-NAPIIA**

**Item Length: 2**  
**NAACCR Item #: 193**  
**NAACCR Name: Race-NAPIIA**

NAPIIA stands for NAACCR Asian and Pacific Islander Identification Algorithm. Race--NAPIIA recodes some single-race cases with a Race 1 [160] code of 96 to a more specific Asian race category, based on an algorithm that makes use of the birthplace and name fields (first, last, and maiden names). For single-race cases with Race 1 other than 96, it returns Race 1. Multiple-race cases (those with information in Race 2 through Race 5, [161-164]) are handled variously; refer to the technical documentation for specifics: <http://www.naacrr.org/filesystem/pdf/NAPIIA%20v1.1%2007032008.pdf>.

The NAACCR Asian and Pacific Islander Identification Algorithm (NAPIIA) is a computerized algorithm that uses a combination of variables to directly or indirectly classify cases as Asian or Pacific Islander for analytic purposes. The computer program will automatically assign the code for this data item.

In Version 1 of the algorithm, birth place can be used to indirectly assign a specific race to one of eight Asian race groups (Chinese, Japanese, Vietnamese, Korean, Asian Indian, Filipino, Thai, and Cambodian), and names can be used to indirectly assign a specific race to one of seven Asian groups (Chinese, Japanese, Vietnamese, Korean, Asian Indian, Filipino, and Hmong). Subsequent versions of NAPIIA may incorporate Pacific Islanders and may potentially incorporate name lists for Thai, Cambodian, and Laotians.

**Codes**

01	White
02	Black
03	American Indian, Aleutian, or Eskimo (includes all indigenous populations of the Western hemisphere)
04	Chinese
05	Japanese
06	Filipino
07	Hawaiian
08	Korean
09	Asian Indian, Pakistani
10	Vietnamese
11	Laotian
12	Hmong
13	Kampuchean
14	Thai
20	Micronesian, NOS
21	Chamorroan
22	Guamanian, NOS
25	Polynesian, NOS
26	Tahitian
27	Samoan
28	Tongan
30	Melanesian, NOS
31	Fiji Islander
32	New Guinean
96	Other Asian, including Asian, NOS and Oriental, NOS
97	Pacific Islander, NOS
98	Other
99	Unknown

*Note:* Codes 20-97 were adopted for use effective with 1991 diagnoses. Code 14 was adopted for use effective with 1994 diagnoses.

**IHS LINK**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 192**  
**NAACCR Name: IHS Link**

The Indian Health Service Linkage (IHS) reports the results of linking of the registry database with the Indian Health Service patient registration database.

The IHS linkage identifies American Indians who were misclassified as non-Indian in the registry. The computer linkage program will automatically assign the code for this data item.

SEER requires the IHS Link for cases diagnosed January 1, 1988 and forward. IHS link may be submitted for cases diagnosed in earlier years. The field will be blank unless an attempt was made to link the case with the records from the Indian Health Service.

**Codes**

- 0 Record sent for linkage, no IHS match
- 1 Record sent for linkage, IHS match
- Blank Record not sent for linkage or linkage result pending

## SPANISH SURNAME OR ORIGIN

Item Length: 1  
NAACCR item #: 190  
NAACCR Name: Spanish/Hispanic Origin

This data item is used to identify patients with Spanish/Hispanic surname or of Spanish origin. Persons of Spanish or Hispanic surname/origin may be of any race.

### Codes

- 0 Non-Spanish/Non-Hispanic
- 1 Mexican (includes Chicano)
- 2 Puerto Rican
- 3 Cuban
- 4 South or Central American (except Brazil)
- 5 Other specified Spanish/Hispanic origin (includes European; excludes Dominican Republic)
- 6 Spanish, NOS; Hispanic, NOS; Latino, NOS  
**There is evidence, other than surname or maiden name, that the person is Hispanic but he/she cannot be assigned to any of the categories 1-5.**
- 7 Spanish surname only (effective with diagnosis on or after 1/1/1994)  
**The only evidence of the person's Hispanic origin is the surname or maiden name and there is no contrary evidence that the patient is not Hispanic.**
- 8 Dominican Republic (effective with diagnosis on or after 1/1/2005)
- 9 Unknown whether Spanish/Hispanic or not

### Coding Instructions

1. Coding Spanish Surname or Origin is not dependent on race. A person of Spanish descent may be white, black, or any other race.
2. Portuguese, Brazilians and Filipinos are not Spanish; code non-Spanish (code 0).
3. Assign code 7 when the only evidence of the patient's Hispanic origin is a surname or maiden name and there is no evidence that the patient is not Hispanic. Code 7 is ordinarily for central registry use only. Code 7 was adapted for use effective with 1/1/1994 diagnoses.
4. Assign code 9 "Unknown whether Spanish/Hispanic or not"
5. All information should be used to determine the Spanish/Hispanic Origin including:
  - a. The stated ethnicity in the medical record
  - b. Stated Hispanic origin on the death certificate
  - c. Birthplace
  - d. Information about life history and/or language spoken found in the abstracting process
  - e. A last name or maiden name found on a list of Hispanic/Spanish names

## COMPUTED ETHNICITY

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 200**  
**NAACCR Name: Computed Ethnicity**

Computed Ethnicity records the ethnicity based on last name and/or maiden name using a computer algorithm. The computer algorithm is a list of names which is compared to the patient's surname and/or maiden name to test for Hispanic ethnicity. A computer algorithm must be used to compute ethnicity for all cases diagnosed January 1, 1994 and later. This data item is used in conjunction with the data item Computed Ethnicity Source.

Ethnicity derived from the same algorithm facilitates comparisons between regions with large populations. When data collectors use identical methods and rules to code the Hispanic population, it may be possible to identify population denominators.

The computer-derived ethnicity may differ from the manually assigned ethnicity (Spanish/Hispanic Origin).

Do not record results from NHIA in this field.

### Codes

0	No match was run (for 1994 and later cases)
1	Non-Hispanic last name and non-Hispanic maiden name
2	Non-Hispanic last name, did not check maiden name, or patient was male
3	Non-Hispanic last name, missing maiden name
4	Hispanic last name, non-Hispanic maiden name
5	Hispanic last name, did not check maiden name or patient was male
6	Hispanic last name, missing maiden name
7	Hispanic maiden name (females only) (regardless of last name)
Blank	1993 and earlier cases, no match was run

**Note:** For SEER, blank is allowed only for tumors diagnosed in 1993 and earlier.

**COMPUTED ETHNICITY SOURCE**

**Item Length: 1**

**NAACCR Item #: 210**

**NAACCR Name: Computed Ethnicity Source**

Computed Ethnicity Source identifies the database, method, or computer algorithm that was used to determine ethnicity as recorded in the Computed Ethnicity. The two fields are used together to describe computed ethnicity data.

Do not record results of NHIA in this field.

**Codes**

- 0 No match was run for 1994 and later cases
- 1 Census Bureau list of Spanish surnames, NOS
- 2 1980 Census Bureau list of Spanish surnames
- 3 1990 Census Bureau list of Spanish surnames
- 4 GUESS program
- 5 Combination list including South Florida names
- 6 Combination of Census and other locally generated list
- 7 Combination of Census and GUESS, with or without other lists
- 8 Other type of match (Do not record results of NHIA in this field)
- 9 Unknown type of match
- Blank 1993 and earlier tumors, no match was run

*Note:* For SEER, blank is allowed only for tumors diagnosed in 1993 and earlier.

**NHIA DERIVED HISPANIC ORIGIN**

**Item Length: 1**

**NAACCR Item #: 191**

**NAACCR Name: NHIA Derived Hisp Origin**

The NAACCR Hispanic Identification Algorithm (NHIA) is a computerized algorithm that uses a combination of variables to directly or indirectly classify cases as Hispanic for analytic purposes. The computer program that is run to derive Hispanic origin will automatically assign the code for this data item. The algorithm must be run for all cases.

**Codes**

0	Non-Hispanic
1	Mexican, by birthplace or other specific identifier
2	Puerto Rican, by birthplace or other specific identifier
3	Cuban, by birthplace or other specific identifier
4	South or Central American (except Brazil), by birthplace or other specific identifier
5	Other specified Spanish/Hispanic origin (includes European; excludes Dominican Republic), by birthplace or other specific identifier
6	Spanish, NOS; Hispanic, NOS; Latino, NOS
7	NHIA surname match only
8	Dominican Republic
Blank	Algorithm has not been run

**SEX**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 220**  
**NAACCR Name: Sex**

Code the sex of the patient at the time of diagnosis.

**Codes**

- 1 Male
- 2 Female
- 3 Other (hermaphrodite)
- 4 Transsexual
- 9 Not stated/Unknown

**Definition:**

Transsexual: Surgically altered gender

**MARITAL STATUS AT DIAGNOSIS**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 150**  
**NAACCR Name: Marital Status at DX**

Code the patient's marital status at the time of diagnosis for the reportable tumor.

**Codes**

- 1 Single (never married)
- 2 Married (including common law)
- 3 Separated
- 4 Divorced
- 5 Widowed
- 9 Unknown

*Note:* If the patient has multiple tumors, marital status may be different for each tumor.

Marriage is a self-reported state. If the patient declares themselves as married, assign code 2 "Married (including common law)."



**PRIMARY PAYER AT DIAGNOSIS**

**Item Length: 2**  
**NAACCR Item # 630**  
**NAACCR Name: Primary Payer at DX**

Primary Payer at Diagnosis identifies the patient’s primary insurance carrier or method of payment at the time of initial diagnosis and/or treatment.

<b>Code</b>	<b>Label</b>	<b>Definition</b>
01	Not insured	Patient has no insurance and is declared a charity write-off
02	Not insured, self pay	Patient has no insurance and is declared responsible for charges
10	Insurance, NOS	Type of insurance unknown or other than types listed in codes 20, 21, 31, 35, 60-68
20	Private Insurance: Managed care, HMO, or PPO	An organized system of prepaid care for a group of enrollees usually within a defined geographic area. Generally formed as one of four types: a group model, an independent physician association (IPA), a network, or a staff model. “Gate-keeper model” is another term for describing this type of insurance.
21	Private Insurance: Fee-for-service	An insurance plan that does not have negotiated fee structure with the participating hospital. Type of insurance plan not coded as 20.
31	Medicaid	State government administered insurance for persons who are uninsured, below the poverty level, or covered under entitlement programs.  Medicaid other than described in code 35
35	Medicaid – administered through a Managed Care plan	Patient is enrolled in Medicaid through a Managed Care program (e.g. HMO or PPO). The managed care plan pays for all incurred costs.
60	Medicare without supplement, Medicare NOS	Federal government funded insurance for persons who are 62 years of age or older, or are chronically disabled (social security insurance eligible). Not described in codes 61, 62, or 63.
61	Medicare with supplement, NOS	Patient has Medicare and another type of unspecified insurance to pay costs not covered by Medicare.
62	Medicare – Administered through a Managed Care Plan	Patient is enrolled in Medicare through a Managed Care plan (e.g. HMO or PPO). The Managed Care plan pays for all incurred costs.
63	Medicare with private supplement	Patient has Medicare and private insurance to pay costs not covered by Medicare
64	Medicare with Medicaid eligibility	Federal government Medicare insurance with State Medicaid administered supplement.
65	TRICARE	Department of Defense program providing supplementary civilian-sector hospital and medical services beyond a military treatment facility to military dependents, retirees, and their dependents.  Formally CHAMPUS (Civilian Health and Medical Program of the Uniformed Services).
66	Military	Military personnel or their dependents treated at a military facility

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

Code	Label	Definition
67	Veterans Affairs	Veterans treated in Veterans Affairs facilities
68	Indian/Public Health Service	Patient who receives care at an Indian Health Service facility or at another facility and medical costs are reimbursed by the Indian Health Service  Patients receive care at a Public Health Service facility or at another facility, and medical costs are reimbursed by the Public Health Service.
99	Insurance status unknown	It is unknown from the patient's medical record whether or not the patient is insured.

### Coding Instructions

- Code the type of insurance reported on the patient's admission record
- If multiple insurance carriers are listed on the patient's admission record, code the first insurance mentioned.
- Code the patient's insurance at the time of initial diagnosis and/or treatment. Do not change the insurance information based on subsequent information.

**SECTION IV**  
**DESCRIPTION OF THIS NEOPLASM**

This page left blank

**DATE OF DIAGNOSIS**

**Item Length: 8**  
**NAACCR Item #: 390**  
**NAACCR Name: Date of Diagnosis**

The date of diagnosis is the month, day and year the tumor was first diagnosed by a recognized medical practitioner, whether clinically or microscopically confirmed.

Date fields are recorded in the month, day, century, year format (MMDDCCYY) with 99 for unknown day or month and 9999 for unknown year.

Most SEER registries collect the month, day, and year of diagnosis. The third and fourth digits (day) are recoded to 99 when the data are transmitted to SEER.

**Codes for Month**

01	January
02	February
03	March
04	April
05	May
06	June
07	July
08	August
09	September
10	October
11	November
12	December
99	Unknown month

**Codes for Day**

01	
02	
03	
..	
..	
31	
99	Unknown day

**Codes for Year**

Code the four-digit year of diagnosis  
Record 9999 for unknown year

**Special Codes**

99999999	Unknown date
----------	--------------

## Coding Instructions

The diagnosis date refers to the first diagnosis by any recognized medical practitioner.

1. When the only information available is a positive pathology or cytology report, code the date the biopsy was done, not the date the report was dictated or transcribed.
2. The first diagnosis of cancer may be **clinical** (i.e. based on physical exam, scans or laboratory results for hematopoietic malignancies)
  - a. Do not change the date of diagnosis when a clinical diagnosis is confirmed later by positive histology or cytology.

*Example:* On May 15, 2007, the physician states that the patient has lung cancer based on clinical findings. The patient has a positive biopsy of the lung in June 3, 2007. The date of diagnosis remains May 15, 2007 (05152007).

- b. If the patient receives first course treatment and there is no information about the date of diagnosis, use the date of admission as the date of diagnosis.
  - c. If the patient receives first course of treatment and there is no information about the date of diagnosis nor is there an admission date, code the date of first treatment as the date of diagnosis.
3. Positive **tumor markers** alone are not diagnostic of cancer. Use the date of clinical, histologic, or positive cytologic confirmation as the date of diagnosis.

*Example 1:* The patient has an elevated PSA and the physical examination is negative. The physician documents only that the patient is referred for a needle biopsy of the prostate. The biopsy is positive for adenocarcinoma. The date of diagnosis is the date of the biopsy (do not code the date the procedure was dictated or transcribed).

*Example 2:* The patient has an elevated PSA and the physical examination is negative. The physician documents that he/she suspects that the patient has prostatic cancer and is referring the patient for a needle biopsy. The needle biopsy is positive. The date of diagnosis is the date the physician documented that he/she suspects that the patient has prostatic cancer.

*Note:* Positive tumor markers alone are never used for case ascertainment.

4. **Suspicious cytology only** is not diagnostic of cancer. Use the date of clinical, histologic, or **positive** cytologic confirmation as the date of diagnosis.

*Note:* Suspicious cytology alone is never used for case ascertainment.
5. If a recognized medical practitioner says that, in **retrospect**, the patient had cancer at an earlier date, code the date of diagnosis as the earlier date. If the original slides are reviewed and the pathologist documents cancer, code the diagnosis date as the date the original slides were made.

*Example:* The patient had an excision of a benign fibrous histiocytoma in January 2007. Six months later, a wide reexcision was positive for malignant fibrous histiocytoma. The physician documents in the chart that the previous tumor (benign fibrous histiocytoma) must have been malignant. Code the diagnosis date as January 2007.

6. If there is **no review** of previous slides with a revised diagnosis of cancer, and **no physician's statement** that, in retrospect, the previous tumor was malignant, or if information on the previous tumor is unclear, do not back-date the date of diagnosis.

*Example:* The patient had a total hysterectomy and a bilateral salpingo oophorectomy (BSO) in June 2007 with pathology diagnosis of papillary cystadenoma of the ovaries. In December 2007 the patient is diagnosed with widespread metastatic papillary cystadenocarcinoma. The slides from June 2007 are not reviewed and there is no physician statement saying the previous tumor was malignant. The date of diagnosis is December 2007.

7. Code the **date of death** as the date of diagnosis for:
- Autopsy only cases
  - Death Certificate Only cases
8. If the case is found by **death certificate** and
- There is no mention of cancer in the nursing home records or in the work-up records, code the date of death as the date of diagnosis. The case remains a Death Certificate Only case.
  - The death certificate is signed by a physician and there is no additional follow-back information, code the date of death as the date of diagnosis. The case remains a Death Certificate Only case.
  - No additional information is gathered from another source code the date of death as the date of diagnosis. The case remains a Death Certificate Only case.
9. **Estimate the date of diagnosis** if an exact date is not available.
- Estimating the **month**
    - Code "spring of" to April
    - Code "summer" or "middle of the year" to July
    - Code "fall" or "autumn" as October
    - For "winter of," try to determine whether the physician means the first of the year or the end of the year and code January or December as appropriate.
    - Code "early in year" to January
    - Code "late in year" to December
    - Use whatever information is available to calculate the month of diagnosis

*Example 1:* Admitted October 2007. History states diagnosed 7 months ago. Subtract 7 from the month of admit and code date of diagnosis to March 2007 (03992007).

*Example 2:* Outpatient bone scan done January 2007 that states history of prostate cancer. The physician says the patient was diagnosed in 2007. Assume bone scan was part of initial work-up and code date of diagnosis to January 2007 (01992007).

- Code the month of admission when there is no basis for estimation
- Code month as 99 if there is no basis for approximation

- b. Estimating the **year**
  - i. Code “a couple of years” to two years earlier
  - ii. Code “a few years” to three years earlier
  - iii. Use whatever information is available to calculate the year of diagnosis
  - iv. Code the year of admission when there is no basis for estimation
  - v. Code year as 9999 when there is no basis for approximation of the year
  
- c. Estimating **both the month and year**: use whatever information is available to calculate the month and year of diagnosis.

**Nursing Home Residents (Not hospitalized for their cancer; no information other than nursing home records and/or death certificate)**

- 1. If the only information available is that the patient **had cancer when admitted** to the nursing home, use the date of admission as the date of diagnosis.
  
- 2. If the only information available is that the patient **had cancer while in the nursing home**, but it is unknown whether the patient had cancer when admitted, use the best approximation possible for date of diagnosis. If there is no basis for an approximation, the default code is the date of admission to the nursing home.



**SEQUENCE NUMBER-CENTRAL**

**Item Length: 2**  
**NAACCR Item #: 380**  
**NAACCR Name: Sequence Number--Central**

Sequence Number-Central describes the number and sequence of all reportable malignant, in situ, benign, and borderline primary tumors, which occur over the lifetime of a patient.

This sequence number counts all tumors that were reportable in the year they were diagnosed even if the tumors occurred before the registry existed, or before the registry participated in the SEER Program. See coding instructions below.

While the Sequence Number-Hospital (NAACCR Item #560) may be useful in determining Sequence Number-Central, the two sequence numbers do not have to be identical.

Rules for Determining Multiple Primaries and the reportability requirements for each diagnosis year should be used to decide which primaries need to be sequenced.

**Codes**

**In Situ/Malignant as Federally Required based on Diagnosis Year**

- 00 One primary only in the patient's lifetime
- 01 First of two or more primaries
- 02 Second of two or more primaries
- .. ..
- .. (Actual number of this primary)
- .. ..
- 35 Thirty-fifth of thirty-five or more primaries
- 99 Unspecified or unknown sequence number of Federally required in situ or malignant tumors. Sequence number 99 can be used if there is a malignant tumor and its sequence number is unknown. (If there is known to be more than one malignant tumor, then the tumors must be sequenced.)

**Non-malignant Tumor as Federally Required based on Diagnosis Year**

- 60 Only one non-malignant tumor or central registry-defined neoplasm
- 61 First of two or more non-malignant tumors or central registry-defined neoplasms
- 62 Second of two or more non-malignant tumors or central registry-defined neoplasms
- .. ..
- 87 Twenty-seventh of twenty-seven
- 88 Unspecified or unknown sequence number of non-malignant tumor or central-registry defined neoplasms. (Sequence number 88 can be used if there is a non-malignant tumor and its sequence number is unknown. If there is known to be more than one non-malignant tumor, then the tumors must be sequenced.)
- 98 Cervix carcinoma in situ (CIS/CIN III, Diagnosis Years 1996-2002)

**Type of Neoplasm/Sequence Number Series**

Neoplasm	Sequence Number--Central
	Numeric Series
<b>Series 1: In situ/Malignant as Federally Required based on Diagnosis Year</b>	00-35,99
All in situ (behavior code 2): Cervix CIS, CIN III (diagnosis year before 1996) All other in situ including VIN III, VAIN III, AIN III	00-35
Malignant (behavior code 3)	
Juvenile astrocytoma (diagnosis year 2001 and later)*	
Invasive following in situ – new primary defined by SEER	
Unspecified Federally required sequence number or unknown	99
<b>Series 2: Non-malignant Tumor as Federally Required based on Diagnosis Year or State or Regional Registry Defined **</b>	60-87,88
<u>Examples:</u>	
Non-malignant tumor/benign brain	60-87
Borderline ovarian (diagnosis year 2001+)	60-87
Other borderline/benign	60-87
Skin SCC/BCC	60-87
PIN III (diagnosis year 2001+)	60-87
Cervix CIS/CIN III (diagnosis year 2003+)	60-87
Unspecified non-malignant tumor or central registry-defined sequence number	88
Cervix CIS/CINIII (diagnosis year 1996-2002)	98

\*Juvenile astrocytomas should be reported as 9421/3.

\*\*Series 2 - the only tumors in Series 2 that SEER requires are benign/borderline intracranial and central nervous system (CNS) tumors.

**Note:** Conversion Guidance: The sequence numbers for neoplasms whose histologies were associated with behavior codes that changed from in situ/malignant to benign/borderline or vice versa during the conversion from ICD-O-2 to ICD-O-3 should not be re-sequenced.

**Coding Instructions**

1. For any reportable in situ or malignant cancer diagnosed in 2004 and forward, count all previous in situ/malignant reportable primaries which occurred over the lifetime of the patient to determine the correct sequence number. A 'reportable' primary refers to the site/histology of the tumor and the years for which its reporting was required. For 2004+ diagnoses, see Reportability Requirements. A person did not have to be a resident of the SEER area for a primary to be counted.
  - a. Code 00 when there is only one primary in the patient's lifetime
  - b. If there are multiple primaries, sequence the cases chronologically as 01 (first of one or more), 02 (second primary), 03 (third primary), and assign the appropriate sequence number to all cases in the database. All primaries in the database for the patient should be evaluated/changed to reflect the correct sequence number.

**Example 1:** The patient has a history of breast cancer in 1989. She has colon cancer in 2007. Assign sequence number 02 to the colon cancer.

**Example 2:** In 1987, patient was diagnosed and treated for childhood leukemia in another state. After becoming a resident of a SEER region, the patient develops bladder cancer. The SEER registry assigns a sequence number of 02 to the bladder cancer.

- c. If there were **no** prior primaries, the sequence number is 00 unless the patient develops subsequent primaries. If a person has a primary with sequence 00 and then develops another reportable /2 or /3 primary, the sequence number of the first primary is changed from 00 to 01.

**Exception:** There are certain cancers that were only reportable for some years. The following are some examples (not a complete list):

- Borderline tumors of the ovary were reported for 1992-2000
- Refractory anemia was reported only for 2001+
- Myelodysplastic syndromes were only reported for 2001+
- Cervix in situ were only required prior to 1996 diagnosis year

**Example 1:** The patient was diagnosed with carcinoma in situ of the cervix in 1994. In 2007 the patient was diagnosed with lung cancer. The SEER registry assigns a sequence number of 01 to the carcinoma in situ of the cervix and a sequence number of 02 to the lung cancer.

**Example 2:** The patient was diagnosed with carcinoma in situ of the cervix in 2003. In 2007 the patient was diagnosed with lung cancer. The SEER registry is not required to collect the 2003 carcinoma in situ of the cervix and assigns a sequence number of 00 to the lung cancer.

2. For any reportable non-malignant tumor of the brain/CNS diagnosed in 2004 and forward, count all previous non-malignant tumors of the brain/CNS primaries in chronological order which occurred over the lifetime of the patient to determine the correct sequence number. The previous and newly diagnosed cancers are restricted to primary site codes C700-C729, C751-C753 with behavior codes of /0 or /1. A person did not have to be a resident of the SEER area for a primary to be counted.
  - a. If there were prior non-malignant brain/CNS, sequence the case chronologically as 61 (if it is the first), 62 (if it is the second)... If the first tumor is in the registry's database, change the sequence number from 60 to 61.
  - b. If there were no prior or subsequent non-malignant brain/CNS tumors, the sequence number is 60.
3. If a patient has both a non-malignant brain/CNS tumor and a reportable /2 or /3 tumor, they are sequenced independent of each other and their chronology, i.e., the non-malignant tumor has a sequence number of 60 and the reportable /2 or /3 tumor has a sequence number of 00.
4. If a registry chooses to collect tumors other than those required by SEER (see Reportability Requirements), those tumors should be sequenced in the 60-87 series with the non-malignant brain tumors.

*Example:* Cervix in situ was diagnosed in 2003 and lung cancer was diagnosed in 2007. The cervix in situ, if collected, would be a sequence number 60 and the lung would be assigned a sequence number of 00.

5. Assign the lower sequence number to the primary with the worse prognosis when **two primaries are diagnosed simultaneously**.
  - a. Base the prognosis decision on the primary site, histology, and extent of disease for each of the primaries.
  - b. If there is no difference in prognosis, the sequence numbers may be assigned in any order.

## PRIMARY SITE

Item Length: 4  
 NAACCR Item #: 400  
 NAACCR Name: Primary Site

For cases diagnosed 1/1/2001 and later, code the primary site using the topography section of the *International Classification of Diseases for Oncology*, Third Edition (ICD-O-3).

The ICD-O-3 has topography codes listed in two sections; the first is a numeric listing by code number, the second is an alphabetic listing by anatomic site. The topography code consists of a lead character (the letter 'C') followed by two numeric digits, a decimal point, and then one additional numeric digit. The decimal point is not entered as part of the code.

**Example:** The pathology report says the primary site is the cardia of the stomach. The code (C16.0) is found in the Alphabetic Index under either "stomach" or "cardia." Enter the code as C160; do not record the decimal point.

## Coding Instructions

**Site-Specific Topography Terms** (See the Coding Guidelines for Topography and Morphology in the introduction of the ICD-O-3 for additional details)

Unless otherwise instructed, use all available information to code the site.

1. Code the **site** in which the **primary tumor originated, even if it extends onto/into an adjacent "subsite."**

**Example 1:** Final diagnosis is adenocarcinoma of the upper lobe of the right lung. Code the topography to lung, upper lobe (C341).

**Example 2:** Pathology report shows adenocarcinoma arising in an ectopic patch of endometriosis on the sigmoid colon. Code the primary site to sigmoid colon (C187), the site in which the cancer originated.

**Example 3:** Patient has a right branchial cleft cyst; the pathology report identifies an adenocarcinoma arising in an ectopic focus of thyroid tissue within the branchial cleft cyst. Thyroidectomy pathology is negative. Code the primary site to branchial cleft (C104).

**Example 4:** The patient had a total hysterectomy with a bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy ten years ago for non cancer reasons. She now has widespread cystadenocarcinoma in the peritoneum. Code the primary site to peritoneum, NOS (C482). (The chart may or may not state that the patient has extra-ovarian carcinoma).

**Example 5:** The patient has a 4 cm tumor in the right breast. The tumor originated in the upper inner quadrant and extends into the lower inner quadrant. Code the primary site to upper inner quadrant of breast (C502).

2. Code the last digit of the primary site code to '8' when a **single tumor overlaps** an adjacent **subsite(s)** of an organ and the point of origin cannot be determined.

**Example:** The patient has a 5cm tumor that involves the dorsal surface and anterior 2/3 of tongue. Code the primary site to C028 (overlapping lesion of tongue).

3. Code the last digit of the primary site code to '9' for single primaries, when **multiple tumors arise in different subsites** of the same anatomic site and the point of origin cannot be determined.

**Example 1:** During a TURB, the physician describes multiple papillary tumors in the bladder neck (C675) and the lateral wall of the bladder (C672). Code the primary site as bladder, NOS (C679).

**Example 2:** Patient has an infiltrating duct tumor in the upper outer quadrant (C504) of the right breast and another infiltrating duct carcinoma in the lower inner (C503) quadrant of the right breast. Code the primary site as breast, NOS (C509).

4. Some histology/behavior terms in ICD-O-3 have a **related site code** in parenthesis; for example: hepatoma (C220).
  - a. Code the site as documented in the medical record and ignore the suggested ICD-O-3 code when a primary site is specified in the medical record.

**Example:** The pathology report says "ductal carcinoma of the head of the pancreas." The listing in ICD-O-3 is ductal carcinoma 8500/3 (C50\_). Code the primary site to head of pancreas (C250), NOT to breast (C50\_) as suggested by the ICD-O-3.

- b. Use the site code suggested by ICD-O-3 when the primary site is the same as the site code suggested or the primary site is unknown

**Example 1:** The biopsy is positive for hepatoma, but there is no information available about the primary site. Code the primary site to liver (C220) as suggested by ICD-O-3.

**Example 2:** The patient has an excision of the right axillary nodes which reveals metastatic infiltrating duct carcinoma. The right breast is negative. The ICD-O-3 shows duct carcinoma (8500) with a suggested site of breast (C50\_). Code the primary site as breast, NOS (C509).

5. Code the primary site, not the metastatic site. If a tumor is metastatic and the primary site is unknown, code the primary site as unknown (C809).
6. When the medical record does **not** contain **enough information** to assign a primary site:
  - a. Consult a physician advisor to assign the site code.
  - b. Use the NOS category for the organ system or the Ill Defined Sites (C760-C768) if the physician advisor cannot identify a primary site.
  - c. Code Unknown Primary Site (C809) if there is not enough information to assign an NOS or Ill Defined Site category.

## Leukemia

Code leukemia primaries to bone marrow (C421); blood cells originate in the bone marrow.

## Lymphoma

### Definitions

**Extralymphatic:** Originating in tissue or an organ that is not a part of the lymphatic system.

**Extranodal lymphoma:** Lymphoma originating in tissue or organ other than lymph nodes. Lymphatic system organs may be extranodal. (e.g.: Spleen is a lymphatic system organ and is also extranodal.)

**Lymphatic system:** An umbrella term that includes: lymph nodes, spleen, thymus, tonsils, Waldeyer's ring, and Peyer's patches.

**Nodal lymphoma:** A lymphoma originating in lymph nodes.

### Lymphoma Coding Instructions

1. When a single lymph node chain is involved, code that chain as the primary site.
2. When **multiple lymph node chains** are involved at the time of **diagnosis**, do not simply code the lymph node chain that was biopsied.
  - a. If it is possible to determine where the disease originated, code the primary site to that lymph node chain.
  - b. If multiple lymph node chains are involved and all involved chains are located in the same lymph node region (i.e. the same primary site code) and it is not possible to determine the lymph node chain where the disease originated, code the primary site to lymph nodes of the specified nodal region (C77\_).
  - c. If multiple lymph node chains are involved and the involved chains are in different lymph node regions, code C778 (lymph nodes of multiple regions).
3. When the lymphoma is **extranodal and is**
  - a. **Confined to the organ of origin**, code the organ of origin.

**Example:** Pathology from a stomach resection shows lymphoma. No other pathologic or clinical disease identified. Code the primary site as stomach, NOS (C169).

- b. Present in an **extranodal organ/site and** in that organ/site's **regional lymph nodes** code the extranodal organ/site as the primary site.

Lymphomas that are primary in an extranodal organ/site may metastasize to that organ/site's regional lymph nodes. In rare cases a lymphoma may spread from the lymph node to an extranodal site or extralymphatic organ by direct extension.

**Example 1:** Lymphoma is present in the spleen and splenic lymph nodes. Code the primary site to spleen (C422).

**Example 2:** Lymphoma is present in the stomach and the gastric lymph nodes. Code the primary site to stomach, NOS (C169).

- c. Present in **extranodal organ(s)/site and non-regional lymph nodes**, consult the physician to determine the primary site. If a site cannot be determined, code primary site to Lymph Node, NOS (C779).
4. If the **primary site is unknown** or not given:
  - a. Code retroperitoneal lymph nodes if described as retroperitoneal mass
  - b. Code inguinal lymph nodes if described as inguinal mass
  - c. Code mediastinal lymph nodes if described as mediastinal mass
  - d. Code mesenteric lymph nodes if described as mesenteric mass
  - e. If the primary site is unknown code Lymph Nodes, NOS (C779)

**Exception:** Code unknown primary site (C809) only when there is no evidence of lymphoma in lymph nodes and/or the medical record documents that the physician suspects that it is an extranodal lymphoma

## Esophagus

There are two systems that divide the esophagus into three subsites. The first system divides the esophagus into the upper third, middle third, and lower third. The second system describes the subsites as the cervical esophagus, the thoracic esophagus and the abdominal esophagus. The subsites for these two different systems are not identical. Assign the ICD-O-3 topography code that describes the primary site documented in the medical record. See the SEER *Self Instructional Manual for Tumor Registrars*, Book 4 for illustrated descriptions of each system.

## Kaposi Sarcoma

Kaposi sarcoma is a rare condition. When not AIDS-related, it usually presents as localized disease with an easily recognized primary site.

AIDS-related Kaposi sarcoma usually presents as a disseminated disease with involvement of mucosal surfaces, visceral surfaces of organs, and skin. It is important to review consecutive records carefully to determine the extent of involvement at diagnosis. Review of a single record may reveal only the site being treated during that admission.

1. Code the Kaposi sarcoma to the **primary site in which it arises**.
2. If the Kaposi sarcoma is present in **the skin and another site** simultaneously, code to the specified skin site, (C44\_).
3. If the **primary site is unknown** or cannot be determined, code skin, NOS (C449).

## Sarcoma

The majority of sarcomas arise in mesenchymal or connective tissues that are located in the musculoskeletal system. The musculoskeletal system includes the fat, muscles, blood vessels, deep skin tissues, nerves, bones and cartilage. The default code for sarcomas of unknown primary site is C499 rather than C809.

Sarcomas may also arise in the walls of hollow organs and in the viscera covering an organ. Code the primary site to the organ of origin.

**Example:** The pathology identifies a mixed Mullerian tumor of the uterus. Code the primary site to uterus, NOS (C559).



## LATERALITY

Item Length: 1  
NAACCR Item #: 410  
NAACCR Name: Laterality

Laterality describes the side of a paired organ or side of the body on which the reportable tumor originated. For each primary you need to determine whether laterality should be coded.

Starting with cases diagnosed January 1, 2004 and later, laterality is coded for select invasive, benign, and borderline primary intracranial and CNS tumors.

### Codes

- 0 Not a paired site
- 1 Right: origin of primary
- 2 Left: origin of primary
- 3 Only one side involved, right or left origin unspecified
- 4 Bilateral involvement, lateral origin unknown; stated to be single primary
- 9 Paired site, but no information concerning laterality; midline tumor

### Coding Instructions

1. Code laterality using codes 1-9 for all of the sites listed in the following table, Sites for Which Laterality Codes Must Be Recorded.
2. Code the side where the primary tumor originated.
  - a. Assign **code 3** if the laterality is not known but the tumor is confined to a single side of the paired organ.

*Example:* Pathology report: Patient has a 2 cm carcinoma in the upper pole of the kidney. Code laterality as 3 because there is documentation that the disease exists in only one kidney, but it is unknown if the disease originated in the right or left kidney.
  - b. **Code 4** is seldom used EXCEPT for the following diseases:
    - i. Both ovaries involved simultaneously, single histology
    - ii. Bilateral retinoblastomas
    - iii. Bilateral Wilms tumors

*Note:* Laterality **may** be coded for sites other than those required above.

3. Assign **code 9** when there is a midline tumor or when the disease originated in a paired site, but the laterality is unknown.

***Example 1:*** Admitting history says patient was diagnosed with lung cancer based on positive sputum cytology. Patient is treated for painful bony metastases. There is no information about laterality in the diagnosis of this lung cancer.

***Example 2:*** Patient has an excision of a melanoma located just above the umbilicus. Assign code 9 for a midline tumor.

**Sites for Which Laterality Codes Must Be Recorded**

<b>ICD-O-3 Code</b>	<b>Site or Subsite</b>
C079	Parotid gland
C080	Submandibular gland
C081	Sublingual gland
C090	Tonsillar fossa
C091	Tonsillar pillar
C098	Overlapping lesion of tonsil
C099	Tonsil, NOS
C300	Nasal cavity (excluding nasal cartilage, nasal septum)
C301	Middle ear
C310	Maxillary sinus
C312	Frontal sinus
C340	Main bronchus (excluding carina)
C341-C349	Lung
C384	Pleura
C400	Long bones of upper limb, scapula, and associated joints
C401	Short bones of upper limb and associated joints
C402	Long bones of lower limb and associated joints
C403	Short bones of lower limb and associated joints
C413	Rib, clavicle (excluding sternum)
C414	Pelvic bones (excluding sacrum, coccyx, symphysis pubis)
C441	Skin of the eyelid
C442	Skin of the external ear
C443	Skin of other and unspecific parts of the face (if midline, assign code 9)
C445	Skin of the trunk (if midline, assign code 9)
C446	Skin of upper limb and shoulder
C447	Skin of the lower limb and hip
C471	Peripheral nerves and autonomic nervous system of upper limb and shoulder
C472	Peripheral nerves and autonomic nervous system of the lower limb and hip
C491	Connective, subcutaneous, and other soft tissues of upper limb and shoulder
C492	Connective, subcutaneous, and other soft tissues of the lower limb and hip
C500-C509	Breast

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

<b>ICD-O-3 Code</b>	<b>Site or Subsite</b>
C569	Ovary
C570	Fallopian tube
C620-C629	Testis
C630	Epididymis
C631	Spermatic cord
C649	Kidney, NOS
C659	Renal pelvis
C669	Ureter
C690-C699	Eye and adnexa
C700	Cerebral meninges, NOS (Effective with cases diagnosed 1/1/2004)
C710	Cerebrum (Effective with cases diagnosed 1/1/2004)
C711	Frontal lobe (Effective with cases diagnosed 1/1/2004)
C712	Temporal lobe (Effective with cases diagnosed 1/1/2004)
C713	Parietal lobe (Effective with cases diagnosed 1/1/2004)
C714	Occipital lobe (Effective with cases diagnosed 1/1/2004)
C722	Olfactory nerve (Effective with cases diagnosed 1/1/2004)
C723	Optic nerve (Effective with cases diagnosed 1/1/2004)
C724	Acoustic nerve (Effective with cases diagnosed 1/1/2004)
C725	Cranial nerve, NOS (Effective with cases diagnosed 1/1/2004)
C740-C749	Adrenal gland
C754	Carotid body

**Note:** A laterality code of 1-4 or 9 **must** be assigned for the above sites except as noted. If the site is not listed on the table, assign code 0 for laterality. Laterality **may** be coded for sites other than those required above.

## DIAGNOSTIC CONFIRMATION

Item Length: 1  
NAACCR Item #: 490  
NAACCR Name: Diagnostic Confirmation

Records the best method used to confirm the presence of the cancer being reported. The data item is not limited to the confirmation at the time of diagnosis; it is the best method of confirmation during the entire course of the disease.

### Codes

#### Microscopically Confirmed

- 1 Positive histology
- 2 Positive cytology
- 4 Positive microscopic confirmation, method not specified

#### Not Microscopically Confirmed

- 5 Positive laboratory test/marker study
- 6 Direct visualization without microscopic confirmation
- 7 Radiology and other imaging techniques without microscopic confirmation
- 8 Clinical diagnosis only (other than 5, 6, or 7)

#### Confirmation Unknown

- 9 Unknown whether or not microscopically confirmed; death certificate only

### Coding Instructions

1. The codes are in **priority order**; code 1 has the highest priority. Always code the procedure with the lower numeric value when presence of cancer is confirmed with multiple diagnostic methods.
2. Change to a lower code, if at ANY TIME during the course of disease the patient has a diagnostic confirmation which has a higher priority.
3. Assign **code 1** when the microscopic diagnosis is based on
  - a. Tissue specimens from biopsy, frozen section, surgery, autopsy or D&C
  - b. Bone marrow specimens (aspiration and biopsy)
  - c. For leukemia only, positive hematologic findings including peripheral blood smears, CBCs and WBCs
4. Assign **code 2** when the microscopic diagnosis is based on
  - a. Examination of cells (rather than tissue) including but not limited to: sputum smears, bronchial brushings, bronchial washings, prostatic secretions, breast secretions, gastric fluid, spinal fluid, peritoneal fluid, pleural fluid, urinary sediment, cervical smears and vaginal smears.
  - b. Paraffin block specimens from concentrated spinal, pleural, or peritoneal fluid.

5. Assign **code 4** when there is information that the diagnosis of cancer was microscopically confirmed, but the type of confirmation is unknown.
6. Assign **code 5** when the diagnosis of cancer is based on laboratory tests or marker studies which are clinically diagnostic for that specific cancer.

*Example 1:* The presence of alpha-fetoprotein for liver cancer

*Example 2:* An abnormal electrophoretic spike for multiple myeloma or Waldenstrom macroglobulinemia.

*Example 3:* If the workup for a prostate cancer patient is limited to a highly elevated PSA and the physician diagnoses and/or treats the patient based only on that PSA, code the diagnostic confirmation to 5.

7. Assign **code 6** when the diagnosis is based only on
  - a. The surgeon's operative report from a surgical exploration or endoscopy such as colonoscopy, mediastinoscopy, or peritoneoscopy and no tissue was examined.
  - b. Gross autopsy findings (no tissue or cytologic confirmation).
8. Assign **code 7** when the only confirmation of malignancy was diagnostic imaging such as computerized axial tomography (CT scans), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI scans), or ultrasounds/sonography.
9. Assign **code 8** when the case was diagnosed by any clinical method not mentioned in preceding codes. The diagnostic confirmation is coded 8 when the only confirmation of disease is a physician's clinical diagnosis.
10. Assign **code 9**:
  - a. It is unknown if the diagnosis was confirmed microscopically.
  - b. Death certificate only cases.

## MORPHOLOGY

Item Length: 6

NAACCR Item #: 521\*

NAACCR Name: Morph—Type&Behav ICD-O-3\*

The *International Classification of Diseases for Oncology*, Third Edition (ICD-O-3), is used for coding the morphology of all cancers. In the Alphabetic Index all morphology codes are indicated by an 'M-' preceding the code number. The 'M-' should not be coded. The '/' appearing between the histology and behavior codes is also not recorded.

Morphology is a 6-digit code consisting of three parts:

1. Histologic type (4-digits)
2. Behavior code (1-digit)
3. Grading or differentiation; or for lymphoma and leukemia, designation of T-cell, B-cell, null cell, or NK cell (1-digit)

The morphology of a tumor can be coded only after the determination of multiple primaries has been completed. (Refer to the Rules for Determining Multiple Primaries to determine the number of primaries.)

### General Rule

If the final diagnosis gives a specific histology, code it. Similarly, if grade is specified in the final diagnosis, code it. Exceptions are found on the following pages under "Histologic Type," "Behavior Code," and "Grade, Differentiation, or Cell Indicator."

\*NAACCR item 521 includes histology and behavior. Grade is not included.

## HISTOLOGIC TYPE ICD-O-3

Item Length: 4  
NAACCR Item #: 522  
NAACCR Name: Histologic Type ICD-O-3

The data item Histologic Type ICD-O-3 describes the microscopic composition of cells and/or tissue for a specific primary.

The *International Classification of Diseases for Oncology*, Third Edition (ICD-O-3) is the standard reference for histology codes for tumors diagnosed in 2001 and later. Do not record the 'M' that precedes the histology code. See sections *Coding Guidelines for Topography and Morphology and Summary of Principal Rules for Using the ICD-O*, Third Edition for guidance in using the ICD-O-3.

### Histology Coding Rules for Non-malignant Brain and CNS Primaries

See page 80 for the histology coding rules that apply to reportable non-malignant brain and CNS tumors.

### Histology Coding Rules for Hematopoietic Primaries

See page 81 for the histology coding rules for hematopoietic primaries.

### Information about the 2007 Histology Coding Rules

**Note:** Do not use these rules to determine case reportability, tumor grade, or behavior.

1. The 2007 histology coding rules **replace all previous rules**.
2. The rules are **effective** for cases **diagnosed January 1, 2007** and after. Do not use these rules to abstract cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2007.
3. The histology coding rules are available in **three formats**: flowchart, text, and matrix. The **rules are identical**, only the formats differ. Use the set of rules in the format that is easiest for you to follow.
4. **Notes** and **examples** are included with some of the rules to **highlight key points** or to add **clarity** to the rules.
5. Rules are in **hierarchical** order within each section (Single Tumor and Multiple Tumors Abstracted as a Single Primary).

### How to Use the Rules

1. Code the histology at diagnosis. Use all information gathered through completion of surgery(ies) in first course of treatment.
2. Do not revise or update the histology code based on subsequent recurrence(s).
3. Read the General Instructions.
4. Read the **site-specific Equivalent Terms and Definitions**.

5. Use these rules to make a decision on coding the histology for all reportable solid malignant tumors.
6. Use the multiple primary rules to determine whether the patient has a single or multiple primaries before coding the histology.
7. Code the histology for **each** primary in a **separate abstract**.
8. Use the **site-specific rules** for the following primary sites:
  - Brain, malignant (intracranial and CNS)
  - Breast
  - Colon
  - Head and neck
  - Kidney
  - Lung
  - Malignant melanoma of the skin
  - Renal pelvis, ureter, bladder, and other urinary
9. Use the **Other Sites rules** for all solid malignant tumors that occur in primary sites **not included** in the site-specific rules.
10. Determine whether the patient has a single tumor or multiple tumors that will be abstracted as a single primary
  - a. Do not count metastatic tumors
  - b. When the tumor is described as multifocal or multicentric and the number of tumors is not stated, use the Single Tumor module
  - c. When there is a tumor or tumors with separate foci of tumor do not count the foci
  - d. Only count the tumors that will be used to prepare that abstract. For example, when there are two tumors that will be abstracted as multiple primaries, you would use the Single Tumor modules to determine the histology code for each of the abstracts.
11. **Each section** (Single Tumor and Multiple Tumors Abstracted as a Single Primary) is an independent, **complete set of coding rules**. For example, if the patient has multiple tumors that will be abstracted as a single primary, start with the first rule under the heading Multiple Tumors Abstracted as a Single Primary. Do not use any of the rules under the header Single Tumor.
12. Use the first rule that applies and

**STOP**



### Priority order for using Documents to Code Histology

Medical records frequently include multiple pathology reports and references to histologic diagnosis. Use the following instructions to identify which reports best represent the histology to be coded.

1. Pathology report:
  - a. From the **most representative** tumor specimen examined
  - b. From the final diagnosis

*Note 1:* Use information from **addenda** and **comments** associated with the final diagnosis to code the histology.

*Note 2:* A **revised/amended diagnosis** replaces the original final diagnosis. Code the histology from the revised/amended diagnosis.

*Note 3:* The new rules **limit** the information **to the final diagnosis**. The old rules allowed coding from information in the microscopic description. You will only use information from the microscopic portion of the pathology report when instructed to do so in one of the site-specific rules.

2. Cytology report
3. When you do not have either a pathology report or cytology report:
  - a. Documentation in the medical record that references pathology or cytology findings
  - b. From mention of type of cancer (histology) in the medical record

### Ambiguous Terms Used to Code Histology

When any of the ambiguous terms are used to describe a more specific histology, code the more specific histology.

#### **Ambiguous terms that are characteristic** (used to code histology)

Apparent(ly)  
Appears  
Comparable with  
Compatible with  
Consistent with  
Favor(s)  
Most likely  
Presumed  
Probable  
Suspect(ed)  
Suspicious (for)  
Typical (of)

*Example:* Non-small cell carcinoma, most likely adenocarcinoma. Code adenocarcinoma.

**BENIGN AND BORDERLINE PRIMARY INTRACRANIAL AND CNS TUMORS  
(C70.0 – C72.9, C75.1 – C75.3)**

**Histology Coding Rules**

The multiple primary and histology coding rules for non-malignant brain and CNS tumors are in Appendix C of this manual and also available in the Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Manual on the SEER web site, <http://www.seer.cancer.gov>.

## HEMATOPOIETIC PRIMARIES

### Histology Coding Rules

#### Coding Instructions

Refer to “Determining Multiple Primaries” in the first section of this manual to determine the number of primaries. Use all of the information for a single primary to code the histology.

1. If there is no tumor specimen, code the histology described by the medical practitioner.
2. Use the histology stated in the **final diagnosis** from the pathology report. Use the pathology from the procedure that resected the majority of the primary tumor.

If a more specific histologic type is definitively described in the microscopic portion of the pathology report or the comment, code the more specific diagnosis.

3. Lymphomas may be classified by the **WHO** Classification, **REAL** system, **Rappaport**, or **Working Formulation**. The WHO Classification is preferred. See page 13 in the ICD-O-3 for a discussion of hematologic malignancies.
4. Code the diagnosis of chronic lymphocytic leukemia (9823/3) and/or small lymphocytic lymphoma (9670/3) to SLL if there are positive lymph nodes or deposits of lymphoma/leukemia in organs or in other tissue. Code the histology to CLL if there are no physical manifestations of the disease other than a positive blood study or positive bone marrow

#### Histology Coding Rules

- The rules are in hierarchical order. Rule 1 has the highest priority.
  - Use the rules in priority order.
  - Use the first rule that applies to the case. (Do not apply any additional rules.)
1. Code the histology if only one type is mentioned in the pathology report.
  2. Code the **more specific term** when one of the terms is ‘NOS’ and the other is a more specific description of the same histology.
  3. Code the **numerically higher** ICD-O-3 code. This is the rule with the lowest priority and should be used infrequently.

## BEHAVIOR CODE

Item Length: 1  
NAACCR Item #: 523  
NAACCR Name: Behavior Code ICD-O-3

SEER requires registries to collect malignancies with in situ /2 and malignant /3 behavior codes as described in ICD-O-3. SEER requires registries to collect benign /0 and borderline malignancy /1 intracranial and CNS tumors for cases diagnosed on or after 1/1/2004. Behavior is the fifth digit of the morphology code after the slash (/). See ICD-O-3 (page 66) for a discussion of the behavior code.

### Codes

- 0 Benign (Reportable for intracranial and CNS sites only)
- 1 Uncertain whether benign or malignant, borderline malignancy, low malignant potential, and uncertain malignant potential (Reportable for intracranial and CNS sites only)
- 2 Carcinoma in situ; intraepithelial; noninfiltrating; noninvasive
- 3 Malignant, primary site (invasive)

### Coding Instructions

Behavior codes 0 (benign) and 1 (borderline malignancy) are reportable for intracranial and CNS sites only, beginning with January 1, 2004 diagnoses.

#### Metastatic or Nonprimary Sites

Cases reported to SEER cannot have a metastatic (/6) behavior code. If the only pathologic specimen is from a **metastatic** site, code the appropriate histology code and the malignant behavior code /3. The primary site and its metastatic site(s) have the same basic histology.

#### In situ

Clinical evidence alone cannot identify the behavior as in situ; the code must be based on pathologic examination and documentation.

#### In situ and Invasive

Code the behavior as malignant /3 if any portion of the primary tumor is invasive no matter how limited; i.e. microinvasion.

**Example:** Pathology from mastectomy: Large mass composed of intraductal carcinoma with a single focus of invasion. Code the behavior as malignant /3.

**ICD-O-3 Histology/Behavior Code Listing**

ICD-O-3 may have only one behavior code, in situ /2 or malignant /3, listed for a specific histology. If the pathology report describes the histology as in situ /2 and the ICD-O-3 histology code is only listed with a malignant /3 behavior code, assign the histology code listed and change the behavior code to in situ /2. If the pathology report describes histology as malignant /3 and the ICD-O-3 histology code is only listed with an in situ /2 behavior code, assign the histology code listed and change the behavior code to malignant /3. See the Morphology and Behavior Code Matrix discussion on page 29 in ICD-O-3.

**Example:** The pathology report says large cell carcinoma in situ. The ICD-O-3 lists large cell carcinoma as 8013/3; there is only a malignant listing. Change the /3 to /2 and code the histology and behavior code to 8013/2 as specified by the physician.

**Synonyms for in situ**

AIN III (C211)  
 Behavior code '2'  
 Bowen disease (not reportable for C440-C449)  
 Clark level I for melanoma (limited to epithelium)  
 Confined to epithelium  
 Hutchinson melanotic freckle, NOS (C44\_)  
 Intracystic, non-infiltrating  
 Intraductal  
 Intraepidermal, NOS  
 Intraepithelial, NOS  
 Involvement up to, but not including the basement membrane  
 Lentigo maligna (C44\_)  
 Lobular, noninfiltrating (C50\_)  
 Noninfiltrating  
 Noninvasive  
 No stromal invasion/involvement  
 Papillary, noninfiltrating or intraductal  
 Precancerous melanosis (C44\_)  
 Queyrat erythroplasia (C60\_)  
 Stage 0 (except Paget's disease (8540/3) of breast and colon or rectal tumors confined to the lamina propria)  
 VAIN III (C529)  
 VIN III (C51\_)

**GRADE, DIFFERENTIATION OR CELL INDICATOR**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 440**  
**NAACCR Name: Grade**

**Grade, Differentiation (Codes 1, 2, 3, 4, 9)**

Pathologic testing determines the grade, or degree of differentiation, of the tumor. For cancers, the grade is a measurement of how closely the tumor cells resemble the parent tissue (organ of origin). Well differentiated tumor cells closely resemble the tissue from the organ of origin. Poorly differentiated and undifferentiated tumor cells are disorganized and abnormal looking; they bear little or no resemblance to the tissue from the organ of origin.

Pathologists describe the tumor grade by levels of similarity. Pathologists may define the tumor by describing two levels of similarity (two-grade system which may be used for colon); by describing three levels of similarity (three-grade system); or by describing four levels of similarity (four-grade system). The four-grade system describes the tumor as grade I, grade II, grade III, and grade IV (also called well differentiated, moderately differentiated, poorly differentiated, and undifferentiated/anaplastic). These similarities/differences may be based on pattern (architecture), cytology, or nuclear features or a combination of these elements depending upon the grading system that is used. The information from this data item is useful for determining prognosis.

**Cell Indicator (Codes 5, 6, 7, 8, 9)**

Cell indicator codes describe the lineage or phenotype of the cell that became malignant. The codes apply to lymphomas and leukemias. Cell indicator codes take precedence over grade/differentiation codes for lymphoma and leukemia cases.

See the ICD-O-3 chapter *Morphology* for further instructions on coding grade.

**Codes**

- 1 Grade I; grade i; grade 1; well differentiated; differentiated, NOS
- 2 Grade II; grade ii; grade 2; moderately differentiated; moderately well differentiated; intermediate differentiation
- 3 Grade III; grade iii, grade 3; poorly differentiated; dedifferentiated
- 4 Grade IV; grade iv; grade 4; undifferentiated; anaplastic
- 5 T-cell; T-precursor
- 6 B-Cell; Pre-B; B-precursor
- 7 Null cell; Non T-non B
- 8 NK cell (natural killer cell) (effective with diagnosis 1/1/1995 and after)
- 9 Grade/differentiations unknown, not stated, or not applicable

### General Coding Rules

1. The site-specific coding guidelines in Appendix C also include rules for coding grade for the following primary sites: breast, kidney, lymphoma, leukemia, astrocytoma, and sarcoma.
2. Code the grade from the final diagnosis in the pathology report. If there is more than one pathology report, and the grades in the final diagnoses differ, code the highest grade for the primary site from any pathology report.
3. If grade is not stated in the final pathology diagnosis, use the information in the microscopic section, addendum, or comment to code grade.
4. If more than one grade is recorded for a single tumor, code the highest grade, even if it is a focus.  
*Example:* Pathology report reads: Grade II adenocarcinoma with a focus of undifferentiated adenocarcinoma. Code the tumor grade as grade 4.
5. Code the grade from the **primary tumor** only, never from a metastatic site or a recurrence.
6. Code the grade for all **unknown primaries** to 9 (unknown grade) unless grade is explicit by histology (i.e. anaplastic carcinoma (grade = 4)).
7. Code the grade of the invasive component when the tumor has **both in situ** and **invasive** portions. If the **invasive** component **grade** is **unknown**, code the grade as unknown (9).
8. Code the information from the **consult** if the specimen is sent to a specialty pathology department for a consult.
9. If there are **multiple pathology consults**, ask the pathologist or physician advisor to determine which information should be used.
10. Do **not code** the grade assigned to **dysplasia**, i.e.: High grade dysplasia (adenocarcinoma in situ) would be coded to 9 (unknown grade).

### Coding Grade for Cases without Pathology or Cytology Confirmation

Code the grade of tumor given on a Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI) or Positron Emission Tomography (PET) report if there is no tissue diagnosis (pathology or cytology report). Use the MRI or PET grade only when there is no tissue diagnosis.

### In situ Tumors

In situ tumors are not always graded. Code the grade if it is specified for an in situ lesion unless there is an invasive component. Do not code the in situ grade if the tumor has both in situ and invasive components.

**Terminology Conversion Table**

<b>Description</b>	<b>Grade</b>	<b>SEER Code</b>
Differentiated, NOS	I	1
Well differentiated	I	1
Fairly well differentiated	II	2
Intermediate differentiation	II	2
Low grade	I-II	2
Mid differentiated	II	2
Moderately differentiated	II	2
Moderately well differentiated	II	2
Partially differentiated	II	2
Partially well differentiated	I-II	2
Relatively or generally well differentiated	II	2
Medium grade, intermediate grade	II-III	3
Moderately poorly differentiated	III	3
Moderately undifferentiated	III	3
Poorly differentiated	III	3
Relatively poorly differentiated	III	3
Relatively undifferentiated	III	3
Slightly differentiated	III	3
Dedifferentiated	III	3
High grade	III-IV	4
Undifferentiated, anaplastic, not differentiated	IV	4
Non-high grade		9

**Two-Grade System**

Some cancers are graded using a two-grade system, for an example, colon cancer. If the grade is listed as 1/2 or as low grade, assign code 2. If the grade is listed as 2/2 or as high grade, assign code 4.

**Two-Grade Conversion Table**

<b>Grade</b>	<b>Differentiation / Description</b>	<b>SEER Code</b>
1/2, I/II	Low grade	2
2/2, II/II	High grade	4

**Three-Grade System**

There are several sites for which a three-grade system is used, such as peritoneum, endometrium, fallopian tube, prostate, bladder and soft tissue sarcoma. The patterns of cell growth are measured on a scale of 1, 2, and 3 (also referred to as low, medium, and high grade). This system measures the proportion of cancer cells that are growing and making new cells and how closely they resemble the cells of the host tissue. Thus, it is similar to a four-grade system, but simply divides the spectrum into 3 rather than 4 categories (see Three-Grade Conversion Table below). The expected outcome is more favorable for lower grades.



If a grade is written as 2/3 that means this is a grade 2 of a three-grade system. Do not simply code the numerator. Use the following table to convert the grade to SEER codes:

**Three-Grade Conversion Table**

<b>Grade</b>	<b>Differentiation / Description</b>	<b>SEER Code</b>
1/3, I/III	Low grade	2
2/3, II/III	Intermediate grade	3
3/3, III/III	High grade	4

*Note:* Do not use this table for breast primaries.

## MULTIPLICITY COUNTER

Item Length: 2  
 NAACCR Item #: 446  
 NAACCR Name: Multiplicity Counter

This data item is used to count the number of tumors (multiplicity) reported as a single primary. Do not count metastatic tumors. Use the multiple primary rules for the specific site to determine whether the tumors are a single primary or multiple primaries.

**Example 1:** The patient has a 2 cm infiltrating duct carcinoma in the LIQ and a 1 cm infiltrating duct carcinoma in the UIQ of the left breast. Accession as a single primary and enter the number 02 in the data item Multiplicity Counter

**Example 2:** Operative report for TURB mentions multiple bladder tumors. Pathology report: Papillary transitional cell carcinoma present in tissue from bladder neck, dome, and posterior wall. Record 99 (multiple tumors, unknown how many) in Multiplicity Counter.

**Example 3:** Pathology from colon resection shows a 3 cm adenocarcinoma in the ascending colon. Biopsy of liver shows a solitary metastatic lesion compatible with the colon primary. Record 01 in Multiplicity Counter (do not count the metastatic lesion).

**Example 4:** Patient has an excisional biopsy of the soft palate. The pathology shows clear margins. Record 01 in the Multiplicity Counter. Within six months another lesion is excised from the soft palate. Use the head and neck multiple primary rules to determine this tumor is not accessioned as a second primary. Change the Multiplicity Counter to code 02 to reflect the fact that there were two separate tumors abstracted as a single primary.

**Example 5:** CT of chest shows two lesions in the left lung and a single lesion in the right lung. Biopsy of the right lung lesions shows adenocarcinoma. No other workup is done. Using the multiple primary rules for lung, the case is abstracted as a single primary. Enter the number 03 in the data item Multiplicity Counter.

## Codes

- 01 One tumor only
- 02 Two tumors present
- 03 Three tumors present
- ..
- ..
- 88 Information on multiple tumors not collected/not applicable for this site
- 99 Multiple tumors present, unknown how many

## Coding Instructions

1. Code the number of tumors being abstracted as a single primary.
2. Do not count metastasis.
3. When there is a tumor or tumors with separate single or multiple foci, ignore/do not count the foci
  - a. When the tumor is multifocal or multicentric and the foci of tumor are measured, count them as tumors

- b. When the tumor is multifocal or multicentric and the foci of tumor are not measured, code as 99
4. Use code 01 when
  - a. There is a single tumor in the primary site being abstracted
  - b. There is a single tumor with separate foci of tumor
  - c. It is unknown if there is a single tumor or multiple tumors and the multiple primary rules instructed you to default to a single tumor
5. Use code 88 for:
  - a. Leukemia
  - b. Lymphoma
  - c. Immunoproliferative disease
  - d. Unknown primary
6. Use code 99 when
  - a. The original pathology report is not available and the documentation does not specify whether there was a single or multiple tumors in the primary site.
  - b. The tumor is described as multifocal or multicentric and the number of tumors is unknown.
  - c. The tumor is described as diffuse.
  - d. The operative or pathology report describes multiple tumors but does not give an exact number.
  - e. It is unknown if there is a single tumor or multiple tumors and the multiple primary rules instructed you to default to a single tumor.
7. Leave this field blank for cases diagnosed prior to 01/01/2007.

**DATE OF MULTIPLE TUMORS****Item Length: 8****NAACCR Item #: 445****NAACCR Name: Date of Multiple Tumors**

This data item is used to identify the month, day and year the patient is diagnosed with multiple tumors reported as a single primary. Use the multiple primary rules for that specific site to determine whether the tumors are a single primary or multiple primaries.

**Date**

Date fields are recorded in the month, day, century, year format (MMDDCCYY) with 99 for unknown month or day and 9999 for unknown year.

**Special Codes**

00000000	Single tumor
88888888	Information on multiple tumors not collected/not applicable for this site
99999999	Unknown date

**Coding Instructions**

1. When multiple tumors are present at diagnosis, record the date of diagnosis.

**Example 1:** The patient has multiple tumors; a 2 cm infiltrating duct in the lower inner quadrant and a 1 cm infiltrating duct carcinoma in the upper inner quadrant of the left breast. According to the breast multiple primary rules these tumors are accessioned as a single primary. Enter the date of diagnosis in Date of Multiple Tumors.

**Example 2:** Operative report for TURB (transurethral resection of bladder) mentions multiple bladder tumors. Pathology report: Papillary transitional cell carcinoma present in tissue from bladder neck, dome, and posterior wall. According to the Bladder, Renal Pelvis, and Ureter multiple primary rules these tumors are accessioned as a single primary. Enter the date of diagnosis in Date of Multiple Tumors.

2. When subsequent tumor(s) are counted as the same primary, record the date of the second tumor diagnosis.

**Example:** Patient has an excisional biopsy of a single tumor in the soft palate on January 2, 2007. The pathology shows clear margins. Record 01 in Multiplicity Counter. On July 10, 2007 another tumor is excised from the soft palate. The multiple primary rules for head and neck state that this tumor is the same primary. Change the 01 in Multiplicity Counter to 02 and enter 07102007, the date the second tumor was diagnosed in Date of Multiple Tumors.

3. Leave this field blank for cases diagnosed prior to 01/01/2007.

**TYPE OF MULTIPLE TUMORS REPORTED AS ONE PRIMARY**

Item Length: 2  
NAACCR Item #: 444  
NAACCR Name: Mult Tum Rpt as One Prim

This data item is used to identify the type of multiple tumors that are abstracted as a single primary. Ignore metastatic tumors for this data item.

Code	Code Text	Description	Example(s)
00	Single tumor	All <b>single tumors</b> . Includes single tumors with both in situ and invasive components	Code 01 in the Multiplicity Counter
10	Multiple benign	At least two benign tumors in same organ/primary site Use this code for reportable tumors in <b>intracranial</b> and <b>CNS</b> sites only May be used for reportable-by-agreement cases	
11	Multiple borderline	At least two borderline tumors in the same organ/primary site Use this code for reportable tumors in <b>intracranial</b> and <b>CNS</b> sites only May be used for reportable-by-agreement cases	
12	Benign and borderline	At least one benign <b>AND</b> at least one borderline tumor in the same organ/ primary site Use this code for reportable tumors in <b>intracranial</b> and <b>CNS</b> sites only May be used for reportable-by-agreement cases	
20	Multiple in situ	At least two in situ tumors in the same organ/primary site	Cystoscopy report documents multiple bladder tumors. Pathology: Flat transitional cell carcinoma of bladder.
30	In situ and invasive	One or more in situ tumor(s) <b>AND</b> one or more invasive tumors in the same organ/primary site	
31	Polyp and adenocarcinoma)	One or more polyps with either <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In situ carcinoma or</li> <li>• invasive carcinoma</li> </ul> <b>AND</b> one or more frank adenocarcinoma(s) in the same segment of colon, rectosigmoid, and/or rectum	
32	FAP with carcinoma	Diagnosis of familial polyposis (FAP) <b>AND</b> carcinoma (in situ or invasive) is present in at least one of the polyps	

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

---

<b>Code</b>	<b>Code Text</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Example(s)</b>
40	Multiple invasive	At least two invasive tumors in the same organ	
80	Unk in situ or invasive	Multiple tumors present in the same organ/primary site, unknown if in situ or invasive	
88	NA	Information on multiple tumors not collected/not applicable for this site	Leukemia, lymphoma, immunoproliferative diseases, and unknown primaries.  All codes 88 in Multiplicity Counter
99	Unk	Unknown	Code 99 in Multiplicity counter, and DCO cases.

### AMBIGUOUS TERMINOLOGY

Item Length: 1  
NAACCR Item #: 442  
NAACCR Name: Ambiguous Terminology

This data item identifies all cases, including DCO and autopsy only, which are accessioned based only on ambiguous terminology. Registrars are required to collect cases with ambiguous terminology and it is advantageous to be able to identify those cases in the database.

Code	Label	Definition	Time Frame	Examples
0	Conclusive term	There was a conclusive diagnosis within 60 days of the original diagnosis. Case was accessioned based on conclusive terminology. Includes all diagnostic methods such as clinical diagnosis, cytology, pathology, etc.	Within 60 days of the date of initial diagnosis.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Adenocarcinoma in TURP chips.</li> <li>2. Mammogram suspicious for DCIS. Excisional biopsy 1 week later positive for DCIS.</li> </ol>
1	Ambiguous term only	The case was accessioned based only on ambiguous terminology. There was no conclusive terminology during the 60 days following the initial diagnosis. Includes all diagnostic methods except cytology. <i>Note:</i> Cytology is excluded because registrars are not required to collect cases with ambiguous terms describing a cytology diagnosis.	N/A	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Chest MRI shows a malignant appearing lesion in the right upper lobe. Patient refused further workup or treatment.</li> <li>2. Pt with elevated PSA admitted for TRUS. Biopsy. Pathology: Prostatic chips: Consistent with adenocarcinoma. No further information is available</li> </ol>
2	Ambiguous term followed by conclusive term	The case was originally assigned a code 1 (was accessioned based only on ambiguous terminology). More than 60 days after the initial diagnosis the information is being updated to show that a conclusive diagnosis was made by any diagnostic method including clinical diagnosis, cytology, pathology, autopsy, etc.	Sixty (60) days or more after the date of diagnosis	The biopsy of the thyroid reads: most likely thyroid cancer. Three months later a biopsy is positive for papillary follicular cancer. The case would have been coded 1 Ambiguous term only. Change the code to 2 Ambiguous term followed by conclusive term.
9	Unknown term	There is no information about ambiguous terminology.	N/A	.

**Definitions**

<b>Phrase</b>	<b>Definition</b>	<b>Examples</b>
<b>Ambiguous terminology</b>	Terms that have been mandated as reportable when used in a diagnosis. See the reportable list below for a complete listing of those terms. See reportability section of this manual or the FORDS for detailed instructions on how to use the list.	<p><b>Clinical:</b> a physician's statement that the patient most likely has lung cancer.</p> <p><b>Laboratory tests:</b> A CBC suspicious for leukemia.</p> <p><b>Pathology:</b> A prostate biopsy compatible with adenocarcinoma</p>
<b>Conclusive terminology</b>	A clear and definite statement of cancer. The statement may be from a physician (clinical diagnosis); or may be from a laboratory test, autopsy, cytologic findings, and/or pathology	<p><b>Clinical:</b> a physician's statement that the patient has lung cancer.</p> <p><b>Laboratory tests:</b> A CBC diagnostic of acute leukemia.</p> <p><b>Cytologic findings:</b> A FNA (fine needle aspiration) with findings of infiltrating duct carcinoma of the breast.</p> <p><b>Pathology:</b> A colon biopsy showing adenocarcinoma</p>

**Ambiguous terms that are reportable**

- Apparent(ly)
- Appears (effective with cases diagnosed 1/1/1998 and later)
- Comparable with (effective with cases diagnosed 1/1/1998 and later)
- Compatible with (effective with cases diagnosed 1/1/1998 and later)
- Consistent with
- Favor(s)
- Malignant appearing (effective with cases diagnosed 1/1/1998 and later)
- Most likely
- Presumed
- Probable
- Suspect(ed)
- Suspicious (for)
- Typical (of)

**Coding Instructions**

1. Use **Code 0** when a case is accessioned based on conclusive terminology. The diagnosis is based on clear and definite terminology describing the malignancy within 60 days of the original diagnosis.

*Note:* Usually the patient undergoes a diagnostic work-up because there is a suspicion of cancer (ambiguous terminology). For example, a mammogram may show calcifications suspicious for intraductal carcinoma; the date of the mammogram is the date of initial diagnosis. When there is a



clear and definite diagnosis within 60 days of that mammogram (date of initial diagnosis) such as the pathology from an excisional biopsy showing intraductal carcinoma, assign code 0.

2. Use **Code 1** when a case is accessioned based on ambiguous terminology and there is no clear and definite terminology used to describe the malignancy within 60 days of the date of initial diagnosis. The diagnosis may be from a pathology report, a radiology report, an imaging report, or on the medical record.
3. Use **Code 2** when a case is accessioned based on ambiguous terminology followed by clear and definite terminology more than 60 days after the initial diagnosis.
4. Follow-back to a physician or subsequent readmission (following the initial 60 day period) may eventually confirm cancer (conclusive cancer term more than 60 days after ambiguous term). Assign **Code 2**.
5. Leave this data item blank for cases diagnosed prior to 01/01/2007.

Cases accessioned based on ambiguous terminology (**Code 1**) should be excluded from case selection in research studies. Direct patient contact is not recommended.

**DATE OF CONCLUSIVE TERMINOLOGY**

**Item Length: 8**  
**NAACCR Item #: 443**  
**NAACCR Name: Date of Conclusive DX**

For those cases originally accessioned based on ambiguous terminology only, this data item documents the date of a definite statement of malignancy. The abstractor will change the code for the data item “Ambiguous Terminology” from a 1 to a 2 and enter the date that the malignancy was described clearly and definitively in Date of Conclusive Terminology.

**Date**

Date fields are recorded in the month, day, century, year format (MMDDCCYY) with 99 for unknown month or day and 9999 for unknown year.

**Special Codes**

- 00000000      Accessioned based on ambiguous terminology only (Code 1 in data item “Ambiguous Terminology”)
- 88888888      Not applicable. The case was accessioned based on conclusive diagnosis (Code 0 in data item “Ambiguous Terminology”)
- 99999999      Unknown date; unknown if diagnosis was based on ambiguous terminology or conclusive terminology (Code 9 in data item “Ambiguous Terminology”)

Leave this field blank for cases diagnosed prior to 01/01/2007.

**ICD-O-2 CONVERSION FLAG**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 1980**  
**NAACCR Name: ICD-O-2 Conversion Flag**

For cases diagnosed 2001 and forward, this computer generated code reflects how the conversion of site and morphology codes from ICD-O-3 to ICD-O-2 was accomplished. This flag refers to conversion of ICD-O-3 to ICD-O-2 and placement of the converted morphology data into the ICD-O-2 morphology field. The original ICD-O-3 code is retained.

**Codes**

- 5 Morphology converted from ICD-O-3 to ICD-O-2 without review
- 6 Morphology converted from ICD-O-3 to ICD-O-2 with review
- Blank Not converted

**ICD-O-3 CONVERSION FLAG**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 2116**  
**NAACCR Name: ICD-O-3 Conversion Flag**

This is a computer generated code specifying how the conversion of site and morphology codes from ICD-O-2 to ICD-O-3 was accomplished.

**Codes**

- 0 Morphology (Morph--Type&Behav ICD-O-3) originally coded in ICD-O-3
- 1 Morphology (Morph--Type&Behav ICD-O-3) converted from (Morph--Type&Behav ICD-O-2) without review
- 3 Morphology (Morph--Type&Behav ICD-O-3) converted from (Morph--Type&Behav ICD-O-2) with review
- Blank Not converted

**SECTION V  
STAGING INFORMATION**

This page left blank

**COLLABORATIVE STAGING AND CODING INSTRUCTIONS**  
**From version 01.04.00**

**INTRODUCTION**

The Collaborative Staging Task Force, formed in 1998, was convened to address the issue of discrepancies in staging guidelines among the three major staging systems used in the United States. This project is sponsored by the American Joint Committee on Cancer (AJCC) in collaboration with the National Cancer Institute Surveillance, Epidemiology and End Results Program (NCI-SEER); Centers for Disease Control and Prevention National Program of Cancer Registries (CDC/NPCR); National Cancer Registrars Association (NCRA); North American Association of Central Cancer Registries (NAACCR); American College of Surgeons Commission on Cancer (CoC), and Canadian Cancer Society / National Cancer Institute of Canada (CCS-NCIC).

The initial focus of the Task Force was to develop a translation or other method of conversion between the TNM staging system of the AJCC and the SEER Summary Staging System. Such a translation would eliminate duplicate data collection by registrars reporting to clinical (facility-based) and epidemiologic (population-based central) registries, address the concerns of clinicians for more clinically relevant data as well as the public health sector's concerns about data reproducibility over time, and provide a higher degree of compatibility between the systems that would expand data-sharing opportunities.

The Collaborative Staging System is a carefully selected set of data items that describe how far a cancer has spread at the time of diagnosis. Most of the data items have traditionally been collected by cancer registries, including tumor size, extension, lymph node status, and metastatic status. New items were created to collect information necessary for the conversion algorithms, including the evaluation fields that describe how the collected data were determined, and site/histology-specific factors that are necessary to derive the final stage grouping for certain primary cancers. In addition to the items coded by the registrar, this unified data set also includes several data items derived from the computer algorithms that classify each case in multiple staging systems: the sixth edition of the AJCC TNM system (TNM), Summary Stage 1977 (SS77), and SEER Summary Stage 2000 (SS2000).

AJCC TNM staging provides forward flexibility and clinical utility for individual cancer cases. TNM is dynamic and is changed periodically to meet the decision-making needs of clinicians regarding appropriate treatment methods and the evaluation of their results. The AJCC TNM staging system uses three basic descriptors that are then grouped into stage categories. The first component is "T," which describes the extent of the primary tumor. The next component is "N," which describes the absence or presence and extent of regional lymph node metastasis. The third component is "M," which describes the absence or presence of distant metastasis. The final stage groupings (determined by the different permutations of "T," "N," and "M") range from Stage 0 through Stage IV. The stage group is generated when specific criteria are met in the TNM system, for example, prostate cancer stage grouping will only be generated for adenocarcinomas. When a case does not meet the criteria for stage grouping, the result will be reported as Not Applicable. An example of this type of case is leiomyosarcoma of the uterus, which is specifically excluded from TNM staging in both the uterus and the soft tissue sarcoma chapter. The Collaborative Staging System is based on, and compatible with, the terminology and staging in the sixth edition of the *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual*,<sup>1</sup> published in 2002. The general rules of the TNM system have been incorporated into the general rules for Collaborative Staging.

Summary Staging provides a measure for cancer surveillance with longitudinal stability for population-based cancer registries. Summary staging is a single digit system and has only eight categories: in situ, local, regional to lymph nodes, regional by direct extension, both regional lymph nodes and regional extension, regional not otherwise specified, distant, and unknown. It is less complex than other staging

systems and was developed for registrars and epidemiologists who want some information on stage but did not wish to collect the more detailed EOD or TNM system. Summary Staging can be useful when a series of cases is so small that only general categories produce enough data for meaningful analysis. The version of Summary Staging commonly used dates from 1977<sup>2</sup>; the site-specific sections were revised and updated in a new edition published in 2001<sup>3</sup>.

The Collaborative Staging System uses a modified EOD format to collect information about each case. The SEER Extent of Disease (EOD)<sup>4</sup> coding system provided longitudinal stability for epidemiological and cancer control studies. More detailed than the Summary Staging System, EOD was developed to assure consistency over time as other staging systems changed. EOD also allows collected data to be collapsed into different and previous staging systems. SEER EOD is a five-field, 10 digit system: tumor size (3 digits), extension of the primary tumor (2 digits), regional lymph node involvement (highest specific lymph node chain involved by tumor) (1 digit), the number of pathologically reviewed regional lymph nodes that are positive (2 digits), and the number of pathologically examined regional lymph nodes (2 digits).



## CHANGES IN ABSTRACTING RULES

**Note:** This introductory discussion refers to schemas based on primary site when in fact some schemas, such as melanoma and lymphoma, are based on histologic type. The schemas are referred to as site-specific for the sake of brevity.

Agreement among the participating organizations has resulted in resolution of the rule for timing of data collection and the development of standardized coding rules so that a single format can be used to collect stage information. The timing rule effective 1/1/2004 for Collaborative Staging is: “use all information gathered through completion of surgery(ies) in first course of treatment, or all information available within four months of the date of diagnosis in the absence of disease progression, whichever is *longer*.” This timing rule change allows the CS Data Set to derive a “best stage” using pathologic data supplemented by clinical data.

Disease progression is defined as further direct extension or distant metastasis known to have developed after the diagnosis was established. Information about tumor extension, lymph node involvement, or distant metastasis obtained after disease progression is documented should be excluded from the Collaborative Staging fields. Collaborative Staging represents the aggregate information obtained during the period of diagnosis and work-up, not just the initial contact with the patient. For example, within the limits of the timing rule, if further diagnostic tests show more precise extension or a more precise tumor size, this revised information is not considered disease progression. In other words, Collaborative Staging does not consider as disease progression a change from lack of evidence of disease (status unknown) to known status of disease (negative or positive). However, a change from negative status to positive is disease progression. Take, for example, an asymptomatic patient who is treated surgically. She then develops bone pain and is found to have osseous metastases within a few weeks of surgery. This would be considered disease progression because she was asymptomatic at the time her treatment decisions were made. Furthermore, if the treatment plan is discontinued or changed due to a revised disease status, this is progression of disease and collection of Collaborative Staging information stops at this point.

Other rule modifications have been made and are printed in the site/histology-specific chapters.

In the process of bringing together the principles of Summary Stage, the TNM categories and stage groupings, and the SEER Extent of Disease coding structure, the Collaborative Staging System has also attempted to update abstracting rules to deal with the contemporary health care environment, in which completeness of staging documentation in the medical record has become an issue. In many circumstances, a patient's insurance will not pay for an imaging study or lab test that is expected to be negative but may otherwise be considered part of an ‘ideal’ cancer staging workup. Similarly, the content of clinician notes has changed over time to simply report any symptomatic, suspicious, or involved areas rather than chronicle every body part that is normal. This change in documentation is a source of frustration to data collectors who rely on statements of normalcy or negativity to establish the boundaries of how far the cancer has spread.

When clinical practice changes and data collection guidelines do not, the completeness of the data is affected. The implementation of the Collaborative Staging System introduces a paradigm shift in the collection of information documenting the extent of disease, particularly in the collection of information about regional lymph nodes or distant metastases for primary sites not easily examined by palpation, observation, physical examination, or other clinical methods. These ‘inaccessible’ primary sites include (but are not limited to) bladder, kidney, prostate, esophagus, stomach, lung, liver, corpus uteri, and ovary.

The Collaborative Staging System allows data collectors to record regional lymph nodes as negative (based on clinical evaluation) rather than unknown when there is no mention of regional lymph node involvement in the physical examination, pre-treatment diagnostic testing or surgical exploration, and the patient receives what would be usual treatment to the primary site (treatment appropriate to the stage of disease as determined by the physician). The basis for this shift in the approach to information missing from the medical record is that typically the clinician reports positive findings and tends to remain silent on some or all negative findings. This new coding guideline also allows data collectors to record distant metastasis clinically as none rather than unknown (again, based on clinical evaluation) when the clinician proceeds with usual treatment of the primary site, since this action presumes the absence of distant metastasis that would otherwise change the treatment approach.

These guidelines apply primarily to localized or early (T1, T2) stage in the TNM system for inaccessible primary sites such as those mentioned previously. The code(s) for unknown information can and should be used in situations where there is reasonable doubt that the tumor is no longer localized. An example would be when there is clinical evidence that a prostate cancer has penetrated through the capsule into the surrounding tissues (regional direct extension/T3a) and regional lymph node involvement is not mentioned.

By coding regional lymph nodes as negative and/or coding distant metastasis as none rather than coding these fields as unknown, the Collaborative Staging System computer algorithms will be able to derive a stage group that includes the best information.

For accessible primary sites that can be observed, palpated or examined without instruments, such as breast, oral cavity, skin, salivary gland, thyroid, and other organs, there should be some description of the regional lymph nodes. A statement such as “remainder of examination negative” is sufficient to code regional lymph nodes as clinically negative.

In summary, the developers of the CS model believe that it will improve the quality of data being collected by the cancer registry community. Uniform rules and standardized training will make it easier for cancer registry personnel to complete staging tasks.

## HOW THE COLLABORATIVE STAGING SYSTEM WORKS

For each cancer case, the data collector determines the site of origin or general histology for the cancer. The data items specific to that cancer site/histology are extracted from the medical record and coded in the Collaborative Staging System fields. When data collection is complete, the data collector activates the computer algorithms to derive the values for the items in the TNM system and Summary Stage (both 1977 and 2000). These algorithms are provided in portable platform-independent form by the Task Force. The classification or stage of each tumor is actually determined by the computer in a consistent and accurate manner (see Mapping and the Computer Algorithm, below).

Table 1 lists the individual Collaborative Staging data items, both input and derived, together with their NAACCR item number, length and other information, as published in the NAACCR Standards Volume II Version 10.1, Chapter X, Data Descriptor Table (revised November 2003).

### MAPPING AND THE COMPUTER ALGORITHM

Once the data collector has coded all of the Collaborative Staging System elements for a case (the input values), the coded values are passed to a computer program that generates the correct stage for the case in three systems: AJCC TNM, 6th edition; SEER Summary Stage 1977; and SEER Summary Stage 2000. The program returns a set of values for the set of output items included in Table 1. A schematic diagram of the relationship between the inputs and outputs is shown in Figure 1.

The output values are returned as a set of numeric codes designed for storage in the computerized abstract. Each of the numeric codes is also provided with a display value, or English language character string showing the meaning of the code. For example, a returned value of 12 for T means T1a, and a 15 means T1b. Appendix 2 shows all of the output values and their display strings.

The computer algorithm that generates the stages is based on the values in the mapping columns for each of the Collaborative Staging System data elements. Mapping is provided from each code to the appropriate category in TNM and each summary stage. Some schemas require reference to two or more tables to determine the appropriate category. The mapping column either contains the category or a pointer to a further table where the category can be determined. Once each of the categories is determined, a further step is performed to generate the final stage groups. An example of the type of reference table used in this final step is shown in Appendix 3 for converting the results of the individual CS Extension, CS Lymph Nodes and CS Mets at Dx field to Summary Stage 1977 and Summary Stage 2000. For TNM stage grouping, the tables are schema-specific. Although the data collector does not code the stage groups directly, the rules by which the stages are derived are explicit in all of the tables, and the logic that the computer program follows should be fully evident from the tables available to the data collector.

As part of the output of the CS algorithm, two additional fields should be stored by the computer in the CS data base: CS Version 1<sup>st</sup> and CS Version Latest. CS Version 1<sup>st</sup> is the number of the version initially used to code CS fields and may be updated if cases are recoded, for example for a special study, using a later version of the Collaborative Staging manual. Depending on the structure of the registry software, CS Version 1<sup>st</sup> could be stored automatically by the computer or entered manually by the abstractor. The meaning and interpretation of CS Version 1<sup>st</sup> will be dependent on vendor implementation and local practices. This field should be interpreted with caution in a dataset where the actual coding procedures are unknown. CS Version Latest is the number of the version of the CS algorithm used most recently to derive the CS output fields and should be updated by the computer (rather than manually) every time the CS Derived items are re-computed.

**OBSOLETE CODES**

From time to time, it is necessary to revise Collaborative Staging (CS) coding tables by reassigning concepts from one code to another to maintain the underlying structure and rules for code assignment. This can occur when a single code needs to be split into more than one code, or when a structure needs to be moved from one table to another (for example, a lymph node being moved from CS Lymph Nodes to CS Mets at Dx). Codes in CS tables will not be deleted while users have data coded with those codes. Instead, the codes will be marked as OBSOLETE in their descriptions, and instructions will be provided for handling previously coded data.

In some cases, it may be possible to perform global corrections on prior data without manual review. In other cases, such as when a code is being split, it will be necessary to manually review abstracts and recode them. Guidance for handling each instance of OBSOLETE will be provided when the change is published.

The designation of OBSOLETE is an official part of the description of the code, and it should be displayed to users, for example, in pick lists for coding new data so that the codes are not used into the future, and in translation of codes in displays or printouts of abstracts.

**Table 1. Allowable Values and Format for Collaborative Staging Data Items**

**INPUT ITEMS**

<b>Data Item Name</b>	<b>NAACCR Data Item Number</b>	<b>Character Length</b>	<b>Allowable Values (site-specific unless otherwise stated)</b>	<b>Right Justified, Zero filled</b>	<b>Blanks: Yes or No</b>	<b>NAACCR Ver 10.x Column #</b>
CS Tumor Size	2800	3	000-999	Yes	No	629-631
CS Extension	2810	2	00-99	Yes	No	632-633
CS Tumor Size/Ext Eval	2820	1	0-9	N/A	No	634-634
CS Lymph Nodes	2830	2	00-99	Yes	No	635-636
CS Reg Nodes Eval	2840	1	0-9	N/A	No	637-637
Regional Nodes Examined	830	2	00-90, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99 (all sites)	Yes	No	541-542
Regional Nodes Positive	820	2	00-90, 95, 97, 98, 99 (all sites)	Yes	No	539-540
CS Mets At Dx	2850	2	00-99	Yes	No	638-639
CS Mets Eval	2860	1	0-9	N/A	No	640-640
CS Site-Specific Factor 1	2880	3	000-999	Yes	No	641-643
CS Site-Specific Factor 2	2890	3	000-999	Yes	No	644-646
CS Site-Specific Factor 4	2910	3	000-999	Yes	No	650-652
CS Site-Specific Factor 5	2920	3	000-999	Yes	No	6535-655
CS Site-Specific Factor 6	2930	3	000-999	Yes	No	656-658

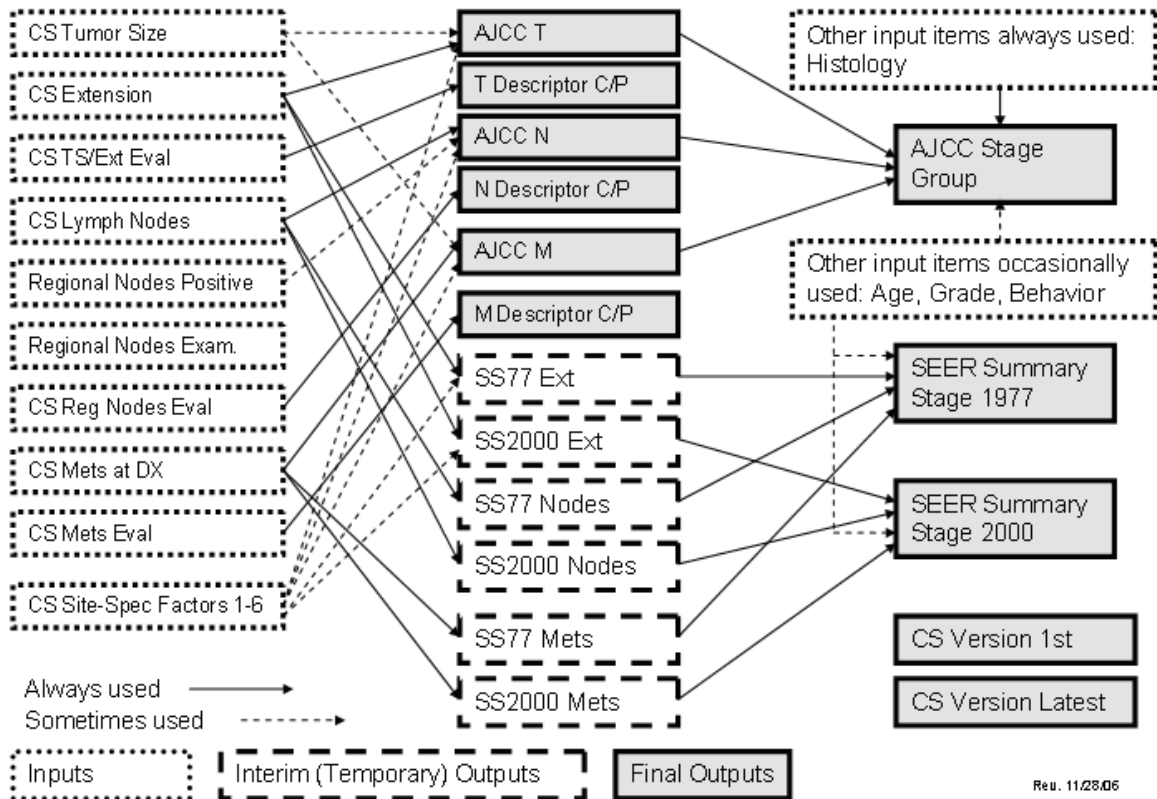
**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**OUTPUT ITEMS**

<b>Data Item Name</b>	<b>NAACCR Data Item Number</b>	<b>Character Length</b>	<b>Allowable Values (site-specific unless otherwise stated)</b>	<b>Right Justified, Zero filled</b>	<b>Blanks: Yes or No</b>	<b>NAACCR Ver 10.x Column #</b>
Derived AJCC T	2940	2	00, 01, 05, 06, 07, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 49, 88, 99	N/A	N/A	659-660
Derived AJCC N	2960	2	00, 01, 02, 03, 04, 09, 10, 11, 12, 13, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 39, 88, 99	N/A	N/A	662-663
Derived AJCC M	2980	2	00, 10, 11, 12, 13, 19, 88, 99	N/A	N/A	665-666
Derived AJCC T Descriptor	2950	1	c, p, a, y	N/A	N/A	661-661
Derived AJCC N Descriptor	2970	1	c, p, a, y	N/A	N/A	664-664
Derived AJCC M Descriptor	2990	1	c, p, a, y	N/A	N/A	667-667
Derived AJCC Stage Group	3000	2	00, 01, 02, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 88, 90, 99	N/A	N/A	668-669
Derived AJCC Flag	3030	1	Blank, 1, 2	N/A	Yes	672-672
Derived SS1977	3010	1	Blank, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 9	N/A	Yes	670-670
Derived SS1977 Flag	3040	1	Blank, 1, 2	N/A	Yes	673-673
Derived SS2000	3020	1	Blank, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 9	N/A	Yes	671-671
Derived SS2000 Flag	3050	1	Blank, 1, 2	N/A	Yes	674-674
CS Version 1 <sup>st</sup>	2935	6	000000-999999	N/A	Yes	705-710
CS Version Latest	2936	6	000000-999999	N/A	Yes	711-716

Figure 1

Schematic Diagram of Relationships of Inputs and Outputs for Collaborative Staging



## HOW MAPPING WAS DETERMINED

The Collaborative Staging Task Force based its codes for the extension, lymph nodes, and metastases fields on SEER's Extent of Disease, which had been designed to accommodate collapsing into TNM 3rd edition and the SEER Summary Stages. Some fundamental restructuring of the EOD codes was necessary to accommodate the sixth edition of TNM with its greater detail and supplementary prognostic information. For example, in EOD, all lymph node involvement (regional and distant) was coded in the lymph nodes field. In Collaborative Staging, regional lymph node involvement is coded in the CS lymph node field, and distant lymph node involvement is coded with other distant metastases. In each table, codes were added or combined where necessary to accommodate the 6th edition of TNM. The following rules and procedures were used to determine the correct mapping to TNM 6th edition:

- **Downstaging rule.** The Collaborative Staging Task Force applied the stated rule from the AJCC manual, "If there is doubt concerning the T, N, or M classification to which a particular case should be assigned, then the lower (less advanced) category should be assigned." When a mapping could be made to more than one classification, for example, T1 or T2, the mapping was always made to the lower or less extensive category. Occasionally this rule did not seem to apply, for example, when a lower category seemed to provide an exclusive list, while the higher category was more general. The downstaging rule was not applied to the assignment of stage group, only to the assignment of T, N, and M classification.
- **Use of NOS.** The Collaborative Staging Task Force added NOS (not otherwise specified) to some of its T, N, M, and stage group categories for clarity and ease of processing. The NOS is added when a further breakdown of the T, N, and M permutations into subsets is available, but the correct subset cannot be determined. NOS can appear in both the descriptions of codes and the mapping. This NOS terminology is not official AJCC usage. The NOS can safely be ignored in reports and analyses when it is not a useful distinction. In addition, the data collector should only code to a category such as "Stated as T1 NOS" when the appropriate subset (e.g., T1a or T1b) cannot be determined.

**Example:** For glottic larynx, T1 means "Tumor limited to the vocal cord(s) . . . ." T1a means tumor limited to one vocal cord, and T1b means tumor involves both vocal cords. In Collaborative Staging, the subgroup of T1 NOS is designated for use when the tumor is known to be limited to the vocal cords, but it cannot be determined whether one or both cords are involved. In Collaborative Staging, the category T1 would be used to mean all of the T1's, including the T1a's, T1b's, and T1 NOS's.

## REFERENCES

1. Greene FL, Page DL, Fleming ID et al. *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, sixth edition*. American Joint Committee on Cancer. New York: Springer-Verlag, 2002.
2. Shambaugh EM and Weiss MA. *SEER Summary Staging Guide 1977*. Bethesda, MD: National Cancer Institute, NIH Publication Number 98-2313, reprinted December 1997.
3. Young JL, Roffers SD, Ries LAG, Fritz AG, Hurlbut AA (eds). *Summary Staging Manual 2000: Codes and Coding Instructions*. Bethesda, MD: National Cancer Institute, NIH Publication Number 01-4969, 2001
4. Fritz AG and Ries LAG (eds). *SEER Extent of Disease Coding, 1998: Codes and Coding Instructions, Third Edition*. Bethesda, MD: National Cancer Institute, NIH Publication Number 98-1999, April 1998.

## GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS FOR USING THE COLLABORATIVE STAGING SYSTEM CODES AND CODING INSTRUCTIONS

The Collaborative Staging System schemas consist of the 15 data fields necessary to derive T, N, M, and Stage Group according to the sixth edition of the *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual*; Summary Stage 1977; and SEER Summary Stage 2000.

This manual provides codes and coding instructions for the process of data entry. In order to derive the desired T, N, M, and Stage Group in the TNM system or the Summary Stage(s), the computer algorithms described in the introduction must be used. This manual provides the logic of the computer algorithms in table format for each schema, but is not intended to be used for generating the stages manually, because for some sites, additional tables are necessary to determine T, N, M, or Stage Group. These additional tables are available for review on the Collaborative Staging web site, <http://www.cancerstaging.org>

These schemas apply to cases diagnosed January 1, 2004 and later. **Do NOT use these schemas for cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2004**; cases diagnosed prior to 01/01/2004 should be coded to whatever coding system was in effect at the time of diagnosis.

### GENERAL GUIDELINES

**Note:** These general instructions refer to schemas based on primary site when, in fact, some schemas, such as melanoma and lymphoma, are based on histologic type. The schemas are referred to as site-specific for the sake of brevity.

1. Collaborative Staging is collected on all cases regardless of whether they are microscopically confirmed. A description of the type of diagnostic confirmation is collected in a separate data item. The diagnostic confirmation field can be used to exclude non-microscopically confirmed cases during analysis as necessary, since the *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual* states that “all cases should be microscopically confirmed. Cases not microscopically confirmed should be coded from the schema for the site/histology the clinician considers most likely to be the primary.”
2. Collaborative Staging is collected on all sites/histologies. Summary Stage 1977 and Summary Stage 2000 are generated for all sites and histologies. The TNM elements and stage group are only generated for cases that meet the TNM criteria. For example, there is no TNM schema for brain.
  - a. The Collaborative Staging System consists of 94 schemas, most of which are site-specific. Some malignancies that can develop in many parts of the body are coded according to the histology of the case. For example, all lymphomas are coded according to the lymphoma schema, regardless of the organ in which the lymphoma develops.
3. All schemas apply to all histologies unless otherwise noted. Summary Stage 1977 and Summary Stage 2000 are generated for all histologies. The computer algorithms for determining the final TNM stage group take into account any histologies that are excluded from TNM staging. For example, the TNM schema for prostate applies only to adenocarcinomas. For excluded histologies, the computer algorithm returns values representing “Not Applicable,” meaning that AJCC T, N, M, and Stage Group are not generated for that site-histology combination.
4. **Timing of Data Collection:** The data collected in the Collaborative Staging System are limited to
  - information gathered through completion of surgery(ies) in first course of treatment, OR
  - all information available within four months of the date of diagnosis in the absence of disease progression (metastasis known to have developed after the diagnosis was established should be excluded)
  - whichever is *longer*.



5. Site-specific and histology-specific guidelines take precedence over general guidelines. Always read the notes pertaining to a specific site or histology schema.
6. For each field, code the highest applicable number. (Exception: codes for Unknown, Not Applicable, and NOS categories such as Localized, NOS do not take priority over more specific codes with lower numbers.) The codes are ordered in a hierarchy so that increasing numbers generally indicate increasing degrees of tumor involvement. The hierarchies are not the same for the different staging systems, and Collaborative Staging generally follows the hierarchies of the TNM system.
  - a. Combination codes (for example, code 35 for “25 plus 30”) have been assigned when using the higher number does not result in the appropriate mapping for all three stage groups. Combination codes have been omitted when use of a higher number results in correct mapping for all three staging systems.
7. For the fields CS Tumor Size, CS Extension, CS Lymph Nodes, and CS Mets at DX, Collaborative Staging records the greatest extent of disease based on combined clinical and operative/pathological assessment.
  - a. Gross observations at surgery are particularly important when all malignant tissue is not removed. In the event of a discrepancy between pathology and operative reports concerning excised tissue, priority is given to the pathology report.
  - b. Clinical information, such as a description of skin involvement for breast cancer and size of the primary lesion and distant lymph nodes for any site, can change the stage. Clinical information should be reviewed carefully to assure accurate recording of the Collaborative Staging data set.
8. When the patient does not receive preoperative treatment and the operative/pathology information disproves the clinical information, code the operative/pathology information.
9. When the patient does receive preoperative treatment, the greatest extent of disease prior to the beginning of treatment should be recorded. Preoperative, or neoadjuvant, treatment is defined as systemic (chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) treatment or radiation therapy that is administered as an attempt to shrink the tumor, improve resectability, or control symptoms before the patient undergoes surgery. In the infrequent situation where post-operative disease is more extensive despite neoadjuvant treatment, this can be coded in the method of evaluation field for extension, regional lymph nodes or metastases at diagnosis.
10. The fields Reg LN Pos and Reg LN Exam are based on pathologic (microscopic) information only.
11. The fields CS Tumor Size/Ext Eval, CS Reg Nodes Eval, and CS Mets Eval document how the most extensive tumor was established as well as whether the patient received preoperative treatment.
12. Site-Specific Factors (SSFs) are included in every schema. They are incorporated into the staging algorithms when additional information is necessary to derive tumor (T), lymph node (N), metastasis (M), or TNM stage group, or where the factor is considered to be of clinical or prognostic importance. Information formerly coded as tumor markers, such as estrogen receptor assay or progesterone receptor assay for breast, is coded in site-specific factors. For sites/histologies where some or all site specific factors are not used, they are coded 888, not applicable. Table 2 lists the schemas that require one or more Site Specific Factors. Appendix 4 lists the names of each site specific factor by schema.

**Table 2. Site Specific Factors Used For Primary Site/Histology Schemas**

SSF	Sites/histologies where used		
1	head and neck* colon rectum liver pleura melanoma	mycosis fungoides breast ovary placenta prostate testis melanoma/conjunctiva melanoma/choroid	melanoma/iris and ciliary body retinoblastoma brain other cns thyroid other endocrine Kaposi sarcoma lymphoma
2	head and neck*, liver, melanoma, breast, prostate, testis, lymphoma		
3	head and neck*, melanoma, breast, prostate, testis, lymphoma		
4	head and neck*, melanoma, breast, prostate, testis		
5	head and neck*, breast, prostate, testis		
6	head and neck*, breast, prostate		

\* head and neck includes the following schemas: upper lip; lower lip; other lip; base of tongue; anterior tongue; upper gum; lower gum and retromolar trigone; other gum; floor of mouth; hard palate; soft palate/uvula; other mouth; buccal mucosa; parotid gland; submandibular gland; other salivary glands; oropharynx; anterior surface of epiglottis; nasopharynx; pyriform sinus/hypopharynx; other pharynx; nasal cavity; middle ear; maxillary sinus; ethmoid sinus; other sinus; glottic larynx; supraglottic larynx; subglottic larynx; other larynx

13. Metastasis known to have developed after the initial extent of disease was established (in other words, disease progression) should be excluded when determining the farthest extent of disease at the time of diagnosis.
14. Autopsy reports are used in coding the Collaborative Staging System in the same way as are pathology reports, applying the same rules for inclusion and exclusion.
15. The extent of disease may be described only in terms of T (tumor), N (node), and M (metastasis) characteristics. In such cases, assign the code in the appropriate field that corresponds to the TNM information. If there is a discrepancy between documentation in the medical record and the physician's assignment of TNM, the documentation takes precedence. Cases of this type should be discussed with the physician who assigned the TNM.

## STRUCTURE AND FORMAT OF SITE/HISTOLOGY-SPECIFIC CODE SCHEMAS

The schemas in this manual are listed according to the order of the first ICD-O-3 primary site code to which a schema applies. Schemas for which there is no TNM classification are included in ICD-O-3 sequence in the manual. Some of the histology-based schemas appear in site code order (for example, melanoma of the skin is with other skin schemas), and others are at the end of the list. Two indices to the schemas are provided at the end of this manual, one by ICD-O-3 code and the other by common primary site and histology terms.

Within the schemas themselves, the code structures for the various organs, lymph nodes, and other tissues are organized according to the T, N, and M categories (T1, then T2, then T3, for example). As such, they may not be sequential for Summary Stage definitions. Regardless of the relative order of the codes in the schemas, the staging algorithms will properly account for the information.

The categories of TNM are the basis for the CS Extension, CS Lymph Nodes and CS Mets at DX fields. Tissues categorized under T in the TNM system are listed in CS Extension and tissues categorized under M are listed in the CS Mets at DX field. However, for the Summary Staging (1977 and/or 2000) algorithms, there may be codes in the CS Extension field that map to regional direct extension or distant stage, and there may be codes in CS Mets at DX that map to regional or even localized disease. The details of the case should be coded in the fields where they are listed; the computer algorithm is designed to generate the correct stage. It should also be noted that information in fields other than CS Extension may be used to derive the T, N, M and Stage Group, for example tumor size and various site-specific factors.

## CODING “NONE” VS. “UNKNOWN” IN THE COLLABORATIVE STAGING SYSTEM, TNM AND SUMMARY STAGE

As noted in the introduction, cancers of certain primary sites are not easily examined by palpation, observation, physical examination, or other clinical methods. These ‘inaccessible’ primary sites include, but are not limited to, bladder, kidney, prostate, esophagus, stomach, lung, liver, corpus uteri and ovary.

A new coding rule in the Collaborative Staging System applies to these inaccessible sites, primarily for localized or early (T1, T2) stage cancers. The Collaborative Staging System allows data collectors to record regional lymph nodes as negative (based on clinical evaluation) rather than unknown when there is no mention of regional lymph node involvement in the physical examination, pre-treatment diagnostic testing or surgical exploration, and the patient receives what would be usual treatment to the primary site (treatment appropriate to the stage of disease as determined by the physician).

This new coding guideline also permits data collectors to record distant metastasis clinically as none rather than unknown (again, based on clinical evaluation) when the clinician proceeds with usual treatment of the primary site, since this action presumes that there are no distant metastasis that would otherwise change the treatment approach.

The code(s) for unknown information can and should be used in situations where there is reasonable doubt that the tumor is no longer localized. For example, when there is clinical evidence that a prostate cancer has penetrated through the capsule into the surrounding tissues (regional direct extension/T3a) and regional lymph node involvement is not mentioned, it would be correct to code lymph node involvement and metastases at diagnosis as unknown in the absence of any specific information regarding nodes or distant metastases.

For accessible primary sites that can be observed, palpated or examined without instruments, such as breast, oral cavity, skin, salivary gland, thyroid, and other organs, there should be some description of the regional lymph node status. A statement such as "remainder of examination negative" is sufficient to code regional lymph nodes as clinically negative.

### CHOOSING THE CORRECT CODING SCHEMA FOR A CASE

Most of the Collaborative Staging System schemas apply to cases defined by their primary site codes in ICD-O-3. A few of the schemas apply to cases defined by their histologic type codes in ICD-O-3, and these schemas take precedence over the schema for the site. The histologically defined schemas are shown in Table 3.

**Table 3. Histology-Specific Coding Schemas**

Melanoma (ICD-O-3 morphology codes 8720-8790)  
Kaposi sarcoma (9140)  
Retinoblastoma (9510-9514)  
Lymphoma (9590-9699 and 9702-9729)  
Mycosis Fungoides (9700-9701)  
Hematopoietic and reticuloendothelial system (9731-9989)

A case with one of these ICD-O-3 histologic types must be coded using the schema for the histologic type group.

Melanomas are further broken down by primary site code, as follows:

Malignant melanoma of the skin, vulva, penis and scrotum (C44.0-C44.9, C51.0-C51.2, C51.8-C51.9, C60.0-C60.1, C60.8-C60.9, C63.2)  
Malignant melanoma of conjunctiva (C69.0)  
Malignant melanoma of iris and ciliary body (C69.4)  
Malignant melanoma of choroid (C69.3)  
Malignant melanoma of other eye (C69.1, C69.2, C69.5, C69.8-C69.9)

For cases with all other histologic types, the correct schema to use is determined by the primary site code.

Each schema clearly states the applicable primary site codes and histologic type codes at the beginning of the schema.

**Note:** The appropriate site or histology schema to use for coding surgical treatment(s) may be different from the site or histology schema used for coding the Collaborative Staging data set. For example, an extralymphatic lymphoma of the stomach treated surgically would use the lymphoma schema in this manual to code Collaborative Staging, but surgery would be coded using the stomach codes for surgery of primary site. Refer to the treatment coding rules in the SEER Program coding manual or the FORDS manual for more details.

## SCHEMAS WHERE TUMOR SIZE IS NECESSARY FOR AJCC STAGING

In order to classify the T category for certain sites/histologies, it is necessary to know the size of the primary tumor, usually for T1 - T3. For the following sites/histologies, the size of the primary tumor must be recorded in order to assign the T category and derive a stage group. Tumor size is not necessary to assign Summary Stage. The name of the Collaborative Staging schema and its website file name (shown in parentheses) are double indented under the **TNM chapter** and *subsite* names. (See Table 4.)

Table 4. Schemas Where Tumor Size Is Necessary For AJCC Staging

<b>Lip and oral cavity</b>	<b>Lung</b>
<i>Lip</i>	Lung (Lung)
Upper Lip (LipUpper)	<b>Bone</b>
Lower Lip (LipLower)	Bone (Bone)
Other Lip (OthLip)	<b>Soft tissue sarcoma</b>
<i>Oral Cavity</i>	Heart and Mediastinum
Anterior Tongue (AntTongue)	(HeartMediastinum)
Upper Gum (GumUpper)	Soft Tissue (SoftTissue)
Lower Gum (GumLower)	Peritoneum (Peritoneum)
Other Gum (OthGum)	<b>Carcinoma of the Skin</b>
Floor of Mouth (FOM)	Skin, Vulva, Penis,
Hard Palate (HardPalate)	Scrotum–Carcinoma (Skin)
Buccal Mucosa (BuccalMucosa)	<b>Carcinoma of the Eyelid</b>
Other Mouth (OthMouth)	Skin of Eyelid–Carcinoma
<b>Pharynx</b>	(SkinEyelid)
<i>Oropharynx</i>	<b>Breast</b>
Oropharynx (Oropharynx)	Breast (Breast)
Base of Tongue (BaseTongue)	<b>Vulva</b>
Soft Palate (SoftPalate)	Vulva (Vulva)
<i>Hypopharynx</i>	<b>Cervix Uteri</b>
Hypopharynx (Hypopharynx)	Cervix (Cervix)
<b>Major Salivary Glands</b>	<b>Kidney</b>
Parotid Gland (ParotidGland)	Kidney (Kidney)
Submandibular Gland	<b>Carcinoma of the Conjunctiva</b>
(SubmandibularGland)	Conjunctiva–Carcinoma
Other Salivary Gland	(Conjunctiva)
(OthSalivary)	<b>Malignant Melanoma of the Uvea</b>
<b>Thyroid</b>	Iris and Ciliary Body–Melanoma
Thyroid (Thyroid)	( <i>ciliary body only</i> )
<b>Anal Canal</b>	(MelanomaIrisCiliary)
Anus (Anus)	Choroid–Melanoma
<b>Liver including Intrahepatic Bile Ducts</b>	(MelanomaChoroid)
Liver and intrahepatic bile ducts	<b>Carcinoma of the Lacrimal Gland</b>
(Liver)	Lacrimal gland–Carcinoma
<b>Exocrine Pancreas</b>	(LacrimalGland)
Pancreas Head(PancreasHead)	<b>Sarcoma of the Orbit</b>
Pancreas Body and Tail	Orbit (Orbit)
(PancreasBodyTail)	
Other Pancreas (OthPancreas)	

## SCHEMAS THAT DO NOT USE TUMOR SIZE FOR AJCC STAGING

In order to classify both summary stage and the AJCC T category for certain sites/histologies, it is necessary to know how far the tumor has extended in a contiguous, continuous or direct manner from its point of origin. For the following sites/histologies, the extension of the primary tumor must be recorded in order to assign the T category and derive a stage group. The name of the Collaborative Staging schema and its website file name (in parentheses) are double indented under the **TNM chapter** and *subsite* names. (See Table 5.)

Table 5. Schemas That Do Not Use Tumor Size For AJCC Staging

<b>Pharynx</b>	<b>Melanoma of the Skin</b>
<i>Nasopharynx</i>	Skin, Vulva, Penis,
Nasopharynx (Nasopharynx)	Scrotum–Melanoma (Melanoma)
<b>Larynx</b>	<b>Vagina</b>
Other Larynx (OthLarynx)	Vagina (Vagina)
<i>Glottic Larynx</i>	<b>Corpus uteri</b>
Glottic Larynx (GlotticLarynx)	Corpus uteri (Corpus)
<i>Supraglottic Larynx</i>	<b>Ovary</b>
Supraglottic Larynx	Ovary (Ovary)
(SupraLarynx)	<b>Fallopian Tube</b>
Anterior Surface of Epiglottis	Fallopian tube (FallopianTube)
(AntEpiglottis)	<b>Gestational trophoblastic tumor</b>
<i>Subglottic Larynx</i>	Placenta (Placenta)
Subglottic Larynx (SubLarynx)	<b>Penis</b>
<b>Nasal Cavity and Paranasal Sinuses</b>	Penis (Penis)
Nasal Cavity (NasalCavity)	<b>Prostate</b>
Maxillary Sinus (MaxillarySinus)	Prostate (Prostate)
Ethmoid Sinus (EthmoidSinus)	<b>Testis</b>
<b>Esophagus</b>	Testis (Testis)
Esophagus (Esophagus)	<b>Renal Pelvis and Ureter</b>
<b>Stomach</b>	Renal Pelvis and Ureter
Stomach (Stomach)	(RenalPelvis)
<b>Small Intestine</b>	<b>Urinary Bladder</b>
Small intestine (SmallIntestine)	Bladder (Bladder)
<b>Colon and rectum</b>	<b>Urethra</b>
Colon (Colon)	Urethra (Urethra)
Rectum (Rectum)	<b>Malignant Melanoma of the Conjunctiva</b>
<b>Gallbladder</b>	Conjunctiva–Melanoma
Gallbladder (Gallbladder)	(MelanomaConjunctiva)
<b>Extrahepatic bile ducts</b>	<b>Malignant Melanoma of the Uvea</b>
Extrahepatic bile ducts	Iris and Ciliary Body–Melanoma
(ExtraHepaticDucts)	( <i>iris only</i> ) (MelanomaIrisCiliary)
Other Biliary and Biliary, NOS	<b>Retinoblastoma</b>
(OthBiliary)	Retinoblastoma (Retinoblastoma)
<b>Ampulla of Vater</b>	<b>Lymphoid neoplasms</b>
Ampulla (Ampulla)	Mycosis Fungoides (MF)
<b>Pleural mesothelioma</b>	Malignant Lymphoma (Lymphoma)
Pleura (Pleura)	

**Table 6. Schemas For Which AJCC Staging Is Not Applicable**

For the following schemas, TNM is not applicable. The name of the Collaborative Staging schema and its website file name (in parentheses) are shown below.

Other pharynx (OthPharynx)	Other eye (OthEye)
Other digestive (OthDigestive)	Melanoma of Other Eye (MelanomaOthEye)
Middle ear (MiddleEar)	Kaposi sarcoma (KS)
Other sinus (OthSinus)	Hematopoietic, Reticuloendothelial, Immunoproliferative and Myeloproliferative Neoplasms (HemeRetic)
Trachea (Trachea)	Other Ill-defined and Unknown Primary Sites (OthIllDef)
Other respiratory (OthRespiratory)	
Other adnexa (OthAdnexa)	
Other female genital (OthFemaleGen)	
Other male genital (OthMaleGen)	
Other urinary (OthUrinary)	
Brain (Brain)	
Other CNS (OthCNS)	
Other endocrine (OthEndocrine)	

#### DEATH CERTIFICATE ONLY CASES

Death Certificate **only** cases are coded as unknown (usually 9, 99, 999, etc.) or not applicable (usually 8, 88, 888, etc.) in all Collaborative Staging fields. Although there may be some site/histology-specific exceptions, the usual pattern for coding Death Certificate Only cases is as follows:

CS Tumor Size	999	CS Mets Eval	9
CS Extension	99	CS Site-Specific Factor 1	888
CS Tumor Size/Ext Eval	9	CS Site-Specific Factor 2	888
CS Lymph Nodes	99	CS Site-Specific Factor 3	888
CS Reg Nodes Eval	9	CS Site-Specific Factor 4	888
Reg LN Pos	99	CS Site-Specific Factor 5	888
Reg LN Exam	99	CS Site-Specific Factor 6	888
CS Mets at DX	99		

#### USE OF AUTOPSY INFORMATION IN COLLABORATIVE STAGING

Information obtained from autopsy may be used in either of two ways in the Collaborative Staging System. The evaluation fields must then be coded correctly to indicate how the autopsy information is to be interpreted. If a patient with a suspected diagnosis of cancer dies and an autopsy is performed, extent of disease information obtained from the autopsy may be included along with other clinical and pathologic information, if it meets the timing rules for inclusion. In this case, the computer algorithm will assign the T, N, or M to “p” (pathologic) classification. If cancer is not suspected at the time of autopsy, the extent of disease information from the autopsy is included, but the algorithm will assign the T, N, and M to the autopsy (a) classification of the TNM system rather than to clinical or pathologic evaluation. Each of the evaluation field schemas has appropriate codes to allow this distinction.

## DEFINITIONS OF ADJACENT TISSUES, STRUCTURES, AND ORGANS

### Adjacent connective tissue

Some of the Collaborative Staging System schemas for ill-defined or non-specific sites in this manual contain a code for adjacent connective tissue, which is defined here as the unnamed tissues that immediately surround an organ or structure containing a primary cancer. Use this code when a tumor has invaded past the outer border (capsule, serosa, or other edge) of the primary organ into the organ's surrounding supportive structures but has not invaded into larger structures or adjacent organs.

The structures identified in ICD-O-3 as connective tissue include the following: adipose tissue; aponeuroses; arteries; blood vessels; bursa; connective tissue, NOS; fascia; fatty tissue; fibrous tissue; ganglia; ligaments; lymphatic channels (not nodes); muscle; nerves (spinal, sympathetic and peripheral); skeletal muscle; subcutaneous tissue; synovia; tendons; tendon sheaths; veins; and vessels, NOS. In general, these tissues do not have specific names. These tissues form the framework of many organs, provide support to hold organs in place, bind tissues and organs together, and serve as storage sites for nutrients. Blood, cartilage and bone are sometimes considered connective tissues, but in this manual they would be listed separately.

### Adjacent organs

Organs are anatomic structures with specific physiologic functions other than (or in addition to) support and storage. Continuous tumor growth from one organ into an organ anatomically next to the primary would be coded to the appropriate code for 'adjacent organs/structures' in the Collaborative Staging schemas for ill-defined and non-specific sites.

### Adjacent structures

Connective tissues large enough to be given a specific name would be considered adjacent structures. For example, the brachial artery has a name, as does the broad ligament. Continuous tumor growth from one organ into an adjacent named structure would be coded to the appropriate code for 'adjacent organs/structures' in the Collaborative Staging for ill-defined or non-specific sites.



## AMBIGUOUS TERMINOLOGY

### INTERPRETING AMBIGUOUS TERMINOLOGY FOR COLLABORATIVE STAGING

Determination of the cancer stage is both a subjective and objective assessment of how far the cancer has spread. Sometimes the clinician is hesitant to commit to a definite statement that a particular organ or tissue is involved by the cancer and uses what data collectors refer to as “ambiguous terminology.” The following lists can generally be used to interpret the intent of the clinician; however, if individual clinicians use these terms differently, the clinician’s definitions and choice of therapy should be recognized. If a term used in a diagnostic statement is not listed below, consult the clinician to determine the intent of the statement.

#### Consider as involvement

adherent  
 apparent(ly)  
 appears to  
 comparable with  
 compatible with  
 consistent with  
 contiguous/continuous with  
 encroaching upon\*  
 extension to, into, onto, out onto  
 features of  
 fixation to another structure\*\*  
 fixed\*\*  
 impending perforation of  
 impinging upon  
 impose/imposing on  
 incipient invasion  
 induration  
 infringe/infringing  
 into\*  
 intrude  
 invasion to into, onto, out onto  
 most likely  
 onto\*  
 overstep  
 presumed  
 probable  
 protruding into (unless encapsulated)  
 suspected  
 suspicious  
 to\*  
 up to

\* interpreted as involvement whether the description is clinical or operative/ pathological

\*\* interpreted as involvement of other organ or tissue

#### DO NOT Consider as Involvement

abuts  
 approaching  
 approximates  
 attached  
 cannot be excluded/ruled out  
 efface/effacing/effacement  
 encased/encasing  
 encompass(ed)  
 entrapped  
 equivocal  
 extension to without invasion/  
 involvement of  
 kiss/kissing  
 matted (except for lymph nodes)  
 possible  
 questionable  
 reaching  
 rule out  
 suggests  
 very close to  
 worrisome

## HOW TO CODE THE COLLABORATIVE STAGING SYSTEM DATA ELEMENTS

### *A one page summary of how to code using this manual*

**Note:** This procedure focuses on only the Collaborative Staging data fields and assumes other registry operations such as case finding, completion of text fields and other data fields, edit checking and case submission are also being performed appropriately.

1. Before you begin to code using the Collaborative Staging System, read completely the general rules in this manual.
2. Read the medical record carefully to determine the primary site and histology and identify the correct ICD-O-3 codes. While you are reviewing the record, make mental notes about the tissues and lymph nodes that are involved by tumor.
3. If the histology is melanoma (8720-8790), Kaposi sarcoma (9140), retinoblastoma (9510-9514), lymphoma (9590-9699 and 9702-9729), mycosis fungoides (9700-9701), or hematopoietic and reticuloendothelial system (9731-9989), use the histology-specific schema for the appropriate histology-site combination.
4. Otherwise, turn to the correct site-specific schema in the Part II of this manual. Schemas are in ICD-O-3 order by the first code that uses the schema. Verify that you are in the correct chapter by confirming that the code is in the list at the beginning of the schema.
5. Begin assigning codes for the 15 fields in the Collaborative Staging System. Be sure to read the notes and follow the site/histology-specific instructions at the beginning of each data field. Some schemas may have site-specific factors associated with extension, lymph nodes or metastasis; keep these in mind as you assign the codes.
  - a. Code the tumor size in the CS Tumor Size field.
  - b. Code how far the tumor has directly spread in the CS Extension field.
  - c. Code how the farthest tumor spread was determined in the CS Tumor Size/Ext Eval field.
  - d. Code whether regional lymph nodes are involved in the CS Lymph Nodes field.
  - e. Code how the farthest regional node spread was determined in the CS Reg Node Eval field.
  - f. Code the number of positive regional lymph nodes from the pathology report in the Reg Nodes Pos field.
  - g. Code the number of regional lymph nodes examined by the pathologist in the Reg Nodes Exam field.
  - h. Code the farthest distant metastasis (including distant lymph nodes) in the CS Mets at Dx field.
  - i. Code how the distant metastasis was determined in the CS Mets Eval field.
  - j. Code the six site-specific factors. If the first site-specific factor is listed as "Not Applicable," code 888 in all site specific factors. Otherwise, code the specific information requested for each site specific factor. When the next site-specific factor is 888 Not Applicable, all the remaining site-specific factors will also be 888.

Congratulations! You have collected all the facts about the case and the codes are ready for the computer to convert into the T, N, M, Stage Group, Summary Stage 1977 and Summary Stage 2000. Depending on your software system, the final stage information may be derived now, when the case is saved, or prior to exiting the case. Finish the rest of the abstract, edit check it and save it.

When the computer derives the final stage information, the program will check the histology code and other coded information to determine whether T, N, M and Stage Group will be generated for the case. If the histology code is on the computer's exceptions list for that site, the T, N, M, and Stage Group will be reported as "Not Applicable." Summary Stage is generated for every case. The computer algorithm will also record which version of the Collaborative Staging System was used to derive the final stages.

**DETERMINING DESCRIPTIVE TUMOR SIZE**

**Millimeter Equivalents for Descriptive Terms**

<u>Fruits</u>	<u>mm</u>	<u>Miscellaneous Food</u>	<u>mm</u>
Apple	070	Doughnut	090
Apricot	040	Egg	050
Cherry	020	Bantan	040
Date	040	Goose	070
Fig (dried)	040	Hen	030
Grape	020	Pigeon	030
Grapefruit	100	Robin	020
Kumquat	050	Lentil	991
Lemon	080	Millet	991
Olive	020		
Orange	090	<u>Money</u>	<u>mm</u>
Peach	060	Dime	010
Pear	090	Dollar, half	030
Plum	030	Dollar, silver	040
Tangerine	060	Nickel	020
		Penny	010
		Quarter	020
<u>Nuts</u>	<u>mm</u>		
Almond	030	<u>Other</u>	<u>mm</u>
Chestnut	040	Ball, golf	040
Chestnut, horse	040	Ball, ping-pong	030
Hazel	020	Ball, tennis	
Hickory	030	Baseball	070
Peanut	010	Eraser on pencil	991
Pecan	030	Fist	090
Walnut	030	Marble	010
		Matchhead	991
<u>Vegetables</u>	<u>mm</u>		
Bean	010	Microscopic focus	990
Bean, lima	020	Described as between 1 and 2 cm	992
Pea	991	Described as between 2 and 3 cm	994
Pea, split	991	Described as between 3 and 4 cm	994
		Described as between 4 and 5 cm	994

**SIZES IN CENTIMETERS, MILLIMETERS, INCHES**

10 millimeters (mm) = 1 centimeter (cm)

1 millimeter (mm) = 1/10 centimeter (cm)

2.5 centimeters (cm) = 1 inch (in)

1 centimeter (cm) = .394 inch (in)

## CODING INSTRUCTIONS FOR COLLABORATIVE STAGING DATA ELEMENTS

## CS TUMOR SIZE

Item Length: 3  
 NAACCR Item #: 2800  
 NAACCR Name: CS Tumor Size

## Description

Records the largest dimension or diameter of the **primary tumor**, and is always recorded in millimeters. To convert centimeters to millimeters, multiply the dimension by 10. If tumor size is given in tenths of millimeters, record size as 001 if largest dimension or diameter of tumor is between 0.1 and 0.9 mm.

Code	Description
000	Indicates no mass or no tumor found; for example, when a tumor of a stated primary site is not found, but the tumor has metastasized.
001-988	Exact size in millimeters.
989	989 millimeters or larger.
990	Microscopic focus or foci only; no size of focus is given.
991	Described as "less than 1 cm"
992	Described as "less than 2 cm," or "greater than 1 cm," or "between 1 cm and 2 cm"
993	Described as "less than 3 cm," or "greater than 2 cm," or "between 2 cm and 3 cm"
994	Described as "less than 4 cm," or "greater than 3 cm," or "between 3 cm and 4 cm"
995	Described as "less than 5 cm," or "greater than 4 cm," or "between 4 cm and 5 cm"
	<b>SITE-SPECIFIC CODES WHERE NEEDED</b>
999	Unknown; size not stated Not documented in patient record

**Examples:**

Mammogram shows 2.5 cm breast malignancy

Code as 025 (2.5 cm = 25 millimeters)

CT of chest shows 4 cm mass in RUL

Code as 040 (4 cm = 40 mm)

Thyroidectomy specimen yields 8 mm carcinoma

Code as 008

Prostate TURP shows 0.6 mm carcinoma

Code as 001 (round up six-tenths of mm)

**For schemas that do not use tumor size:**

Code	Description
888	Not applicable

## Instructions for Coding

1. Refer to general guidelines for Collaborative Staging for timing rules for data collection.
2. Refer to site/histology-specific instructions for additional information. Site/histology-specific instructions replace or over-ride general instructions. Where there are no site/histology-specific instructions, these general instructions apply.
3. Record tumor size information in the following order:
  - a. Record tumor size from the pathology report, if it is available, when the patient receives no radiation or systemic treatment prior to surgery.

*Example:* Chest x-ray shows 3.5 cm mass; the pathology report from the surgery states that the same mass is malignant and measures 2.8 cm. *Record tumor size as 028.*
  - b. If the patient receives preoperative (neoadjuvant) systemic therapy (chemotherapy, hormone therapy, immunotherapy) or radiation therapy, code the largest size of tumor prior to treatment.

*Example:* Patient has a 2.2 cm mass in the oropharynx; fine needle aspiration of mass confirms squamous cell carcinoma. Patient receives course of neoadjuvant combination chemotherapy. Pathologic size of tumor after total resection is 0.8 cm. *Record tumor size as 022.*
  - c. Information on size from imaging/radiographic techniques can be used to code size when there is no more specific size information from a pathology or operative report, but it should be taken as low priority, just above a physical exam.
  - d. If there is a difference in reported tumor size among imaging and radiographic techniques, record the largest size of tumor reported in the record.
  - e. In the infrequent event that the tumor does not respond to neoadjuvant treatment and is, in fact, more extensive after preoperative treatment as determined by the operative or pathology report, code the farthest extension and code CS Tumor Size/Ext Eval as 6, based on pathology/operative report after treatment.
4. Record the exact size of the primary tumor for all sites/histologies except those for which it is stated to be not applicable. If no size is given, code as 999.
  - a. Always code the size of the primary tumor, not the size of the polyp, ulcer, cyst, or distant metastasis. However, if the tumor is described as a “cystic mass,” and only the size of the entire mass is given, code the size of the entire mass, since the cysts are part of the tumor itself.
  - b. Record the largest dimension or diameter of tumor, whether it is from an excisional biopsy specimen or the complete resection of the primary tumor.

*Example:* A 3.3 cm tumor would be 33 millimeters and would be coded as 033.

*Example:* Tumor is described as 2.4 x 5.1 x 1.8 cm in size. *Record tumor size as 051.*
  - c. Record the size of the invasive component, if given.

- d. If both an *in situ* and an invasive component are present and the invasive component is measured, record the size of the invasive component even if it is smaller.

**Example:** Tumor is mixed *in situ* and invasive adenocarcinoma, total 3.7 cm in size, of which 1.4 cm is invasive. *Record tumor size as 014.*

- e. *Additional rule for breast primaries:* If the size of the invasive component is **not** given, record the size of the entire tumor from the surgical report, pathology report, radiology report or clinical examination.

- f.

**Example:** Infiltrating duct carcinoma with extensive *in situ* component; total size 2.3 cm. *Record tumor size as 023.*

**Example:** Duct carcinoma *in situ* covering a 1.9 cm area with focal areas of invasive ductal carcinoma. *Record tumor size as 019.*

**Note:** For breast cancer, document how the size of the tumor was determined in Site Specific Factor field 6. Information from the pathology report can be used to identify *in situ* versus invasive tumor even if exact size is not given. If tumor size is a clinical measurement only in the range 001-989, Site Specific Factor 6 must be coded as 888.

- g. For purely *in situ* lesions, code the size as stated.
- h. Microscopic residual tumor does not affect overall tumor size.
- i. Do **not** add pieces or chips together to create a whole; they may not be from the same location, or they may represent only a very small portion of a large tumor. However, if the pathologist states an aggregate or composite size (determined by fitting the tumor pieces together and measuring the total size), record that size.
- j. If an excisional biopsy is performed and residual tumor at time of resection of the primary is found to be larger than the excisional biopsy, code the size of the residual tumor.
- k. For an incisional needle biopsy, code tumor size as 999 in the absence of a clinical size. Do not code the tumor size from a needle biopsy unless no residual tumor is found on further resection.
- l. Record tumor size (lateral dimension) for malignant melanoma. Depth of invasion is coded in a site-specific factor.
- m. If the tumor is multi-focal or there are multiple tumors being reported as a single primary, code the size of the largest tumor.

## 5. Special codes

- a. Tumor dimension is to be recorded for all schemas, except as noted below. Other information collected in this field in previous staging systems, such as depth of invasion for melanoma, has been moved to Site-Specific Factors for those sites/histologies.
- b. If size is not reported, code as 999, which means unknown size or not documented in the patient record.

- c. The descriptions in code 998 take precedence over any mention of size. Code 998 is used only for the following sites:

Esophagus (C15.0-C15.5, C15.8-C15.9): Entire circumference  
 Stomach (C16.0-C16.6, C16.8-C16.9): Diffuse, widespread— $\frac{3}{4}$  or more, linitis plastica  
 Colorectal (M-8220/8221 with /2 or /3): Familial/multiple polyposis  
 Lung and main stem bronchus (C34.0-C34.3, C34.8-C34.9): Diffuse, entire lobe or lung  
 Breast (C50.0-C50.6, C50.8-C50.9): Diffuse

- d. Code 990, Microscopic focus or foci only; no size is given, should be used when no gross tumor is seen and tumor is only identified microscopically.

**Note:** the terms microscopic focus, microfocus, and microinvasion are NOT the same as [macroscopic] focal or focus. A macroscopic focus or foci indicates a very small or isolated area, pinpoint, or spot of tumor that may be visible grossly. Only tumor identified microscopically should be coded to 990.

**Example:** Ovary specimen: extensive cystic disease with focal areas of tumor seeding.  
 Disregard "focal" and code tumor size to 999 unknown.

**Example:** Cervix conization: severe dysplasia with focal areas of microinvasion.  
 Code tumor size as 990 microscopic focus, no size given.

- e. Codes 991 through 995 are non-specific size descriptions that, for some sites, could still be used to determine a T category. However, if a specific size is given, the more precise size should be coded in the range 001-989.

- f. Other special codes in the range 996 to 997 are used on a site-specific basis. See the individual site/histology schemas for further information and definitions.

- g. **Note:** For the following diagnoses and/or primary sites, size is not applicable. Record as code 888.

Disseminated Langerhans cell histiocytosis (Letterer-Siwe disease)  
 Hematopoietic neoplasms  
 Immunoproliferative diseases  
 Leukemia  
 Malignant lymphoma (Hodgkin lymphoma and non-Hodgkin lymphoma)  
 Mast cell tumors  
 Multiple myeloma and other plasma cell tumors  
 Myelodysplastic syndromes  
 Myeloproliferative diseases

- h. The source of the tumor size (radiographs, endoscopy, pathology specimen, etc.) is documented in the CS Tumor Size/Ext Eval field.

6. It is strongly recommended that the choice of tumor size codes be documented in a related text field on the abstract.

## CS EXTENSION

Item Length: 2  
 NAACCR Item #: 2810  
 NAACCR Name: CS Extension

## Description

Identifies contiguous growth (extension) of the primary tumor within the organ of origin or its direct extension into neighboring organs. For certain sites such as ovary, discontinuous metastasis is coded in the CS Extension field. See site-specific schemas for detailed codes and coding instructions.

Code	Description	TNM Mapping	SS77 Mapping	SS2000 Mapping
00	In situ; non-invasive	Tis	IS	IS
	<b>SITE/HISTOLOGY-SPECIFIC CODES</b>			
80	Further contiguous extension			
95	No evidence of primary tumor	T0	U	U
99	Unknown extension; primary tumor cannot be assessed; not stated in patient record	TX	U	U

## Instructions for Coding

1. Code the farthest documented extension of the primary tumor. Do not include discontinuous metastases to distant sites (these are coded in CS Mets at Dx) except for ovary and corpus uteri (see 2f below).
2. Record extension information in the following order:
  - a. Record extension from the pathology report, if it is available, when the patient receives no radiation or systemic treatment prior to surgery.
  - b. If the patient receives preoperative (neoadjuvant) systemic therapy (chemotherapy, hormone therapy, immunotherapy) or radiation therapy, code the farthest extension identified prior to treatment (clinically).
 

*Example:* Patient has rectal mass firmly attached to pelvic wall (clinically T4, extension code 60). Patient undergoes preoperative radiation therapy. The pathology report from the low anterior resection shows residual tumor outside the rectum in perimuscular tissue (pathologically T3, extension code 40). *Code extension as 60, because the preoperative treatment apparently "shrank" the tumor away from the pelvic wall.*
  - c. In the infrequent event that the tumor does not respond to neoadjuvant treatment and is, in fact, more extensive after preoperative treatment as determined by the operative or pathology report, code the farthest extension and code CS Tumor Size/Ext Eval as 6, based on pathology/operative report after treatment.



**Example:** Patient found to have an obstructing central lung tumor very close to the main stem bronchus (clinically T2, extension code 20). Patient undergoes six weeks of intensive chemotherapy. At thoracotomy, tumor was observed directly extending into trachea (pathologically T4, extension code 70). *Code extension as 70, because the tumor was noted to be more extensive after the preoperative treatment.*

**Example:** Patient has a 5.5 cm hard, moveable mass in the right breast (clinically T3, extension code 10) and receives preoperative chemotherapy. The pathology report from the modified radical mastectomy shows residual 2.8 cm mass with infiltration of the deep subcutaneous tissues over the mass (pathologically T2, extension code 20). *Code extension as 20, because although the chemotherapy “shrank” the tumor, the residual tumor was found to be more extensive than the clinical presentation.*

- d. Information on extent of disease from imaging/radiographic techniques can be used to code extension when there is no more specific extension information from a pathology or operative report, but it should be taken as low priority, just above a physical exam.
- e. If an involved organ or tissue is not mentioned in the schema, approximate the location and code it with listed organs or tissues in the same anatomic area.
- f. With the exception of corpus uteri and ovary, all codes represent contiguous (direct) extension of tumor from the site of origin to the organ/structure/tissue represented in the code.

**Example:** Carcinoma of the prostate with extension to pubic bone would be coded 60.  
Carcinoma of the prostate with metastases to thoracic spine would be coded in CS Extension to the appropriate code for tumor extension and the metastases to the thoracic spine would be coded in the CS Mets at Dx field.

1. Refer to general guidelines for Collaborative Staging for timing rules for data collection.
2. Refer to the ambiguous terminology section for terms that constitute tumor involvement or extension.
3. If the information in the medical record is ambiguous or incomplete regarding the extent to which the tumor has spread, the extent of disease may be inferred from the T category stated by the physician.
4. If the only indication of extension in the record is the physician’s statement of a T category from the TNM staging system or a stage from a site-specific staging system, such as Dukes’ C, record the numerically lowest equivalent extension code for that T category.
5. Some site or histology schemas include designations such as T1, NOS; T2, NOS; Localized, NOS; and other non-specific categories. The NOS is added when there is further breakdown of the category into subsets (such as T1a, T1b, T1c), but the correct subset cannot be determined. The NOS designation, which can appear in both the descriptions of codes and the mapping, is not official AJCC descriptive terminology. The NOS should be disregarded in reports and analyses when it is not a useful distinction. The data collector should only code to a category such as “Stated as T1 NOS” when the appropriate subset (e.g., T1a or T1b) cannot be determined.
6. Distant metastases must be coded in the CS Mets at Dx field.
7. Do not code CS Extension as in situ if there is any evidence of nodal or metastatic involvement; use the code for Localized, NOS, if there is no better information.

**Example:** Excisional biopsy of breast tumor shows extensive DCIS. Sentinel node biopsy reveals one positive axillary node. *Code CS Extension as 10, localized, NOS, because an in situ tumor theoretically cannot metastasize and apparently an area of invasion was missed by the pathologist.*

8. The presence of microscopic residual disease or positive tumor margins does not increase the extension code.
9. It is strongly recommended that the choice of extension codes be documented in a related text field on the abstract.

## CS TUMOR SIZE/EXT EVAL

Item Length: 1  
 NAACCR Item #: 2820  
 NAACCR Name: CS Tumor Size/Ext Eval

## Description

Records how the codes for the two items "CS Tumor Size" and "CS Extension" were determined, based on the diagnostic methods employed. This field is not required by SEER.

**Note:** This field is used primarily to describe whether the staging basis for the T category in the TNM system is clinical or pathological.

Code	Description	Staging Basis
0	No surgical resection done. Evaluation based on physical examination, imaging examination, or other non-invasive clinical evidence. No autopsy evidence used.	c
1	No surgical resection done. Evaluation based on endoscopic examination, diagnostic biopsy, including fine needle aspiration biopsy, or other invasive techniques including surgical observation without biopsy. No autopsy evidence used. <b>Does not meet criteria for AJCC pathologic staging.</b>	c*
2	No surgical resection done, but evidence derived from autopsy (tumor was suspected or diagnosed prior to autopsy)	p
3	Surgical resection performed WITHOUT pre-surgical systemic treatment or radiation <b>OR</b> surgical resection performed, unknown if pre-surgical systemic treatment or radiation performed Evaluation based on evidence acquired before treatment, supplemented or modified by the additional evidence acquired during and from surgery, particularly from pathologic examination of the resected specimen <b>Meets criteria for AJCC pathologic staging.</b>	p
5	Surgical resection performed WITH pre-surgical systemic treatment or radiation; tumor size/extension based on clinical evidence	c
6	Surgical resection performed WITH pre-surgical systemic treatment or radiation, BUT tumor size/extension based on pathologic evidence	y
8	Evidence from autopsy only (tumor was unsuspected or undiagnosed prior to autopsy)	a
9	Unknown if surgical resection done Not assessed; cannot be assessed Unknown if assessed Not documented in patient record <b>For sites with no TNM schema:</b> not applicable	c

\* For some primary sites, code 1 may be a pathologic staging basis, as determined by the site-specific chapter in the *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, sixth edition*.

## Instructions for Coding

1. Select the CS Tumor Size/Ext Eval code that documents the report or procedure from which the information about the farthest extension or size of the primary tumor was obtained; this may not be the numerically highest Eval code.

**Example:** Fine needle aspiration biopsy (Eval code 1) confirms adenocarcinoma of prostate. CT scan of pelvis (Eval code 0) shows tumor extension through the prostatic capsule into adjacent connective tissues. *Code CS Tumor Size/Ext Eval as 0 because the CT scan showed more extensive tumor than the biopsy.*

2. For primary sites/histologies where tumor size is not a factor in determining the T category in TNM (see Table 5 in the General Instructions), code CS Tumor Size/Ext Eval on the basis of the CS extension field only.
3. For primary sites where both tumor size and extension determine the T category in TNM (see Table 4 in the General Instructions), select the code that best explains how the information in the CS Tumor Size and CS Extension fields were determined.
  - a. If there is a difference between the derived category for the tumor size and the CS extension, select the evaluation code that reflects how the worse or higher category was determined.

**Example:** Tumor size for a breast cancer biopsy is 020 (maps to T1). There is ulceration of the skin (extension code 51, maps to T4).

*Code CS Tumor Size/Ext Eval field as 0, physical examination, because the ulceration information from the physical examination results in a higher T category.*

- b. If the patient had no surgery, use code 0, 1, or 9.

**Example:** Patient has a chest x-ray showing an isolated 4 cm tumor in the right upper lobe. Patient opts for radiation therapy.

*Code this field as 0. Staging algorithm would identify information as clinical (c).*

**Example:** Colon cancer with colonoscopy and biopsy confirming cancer.

*Code this field as 1. Staging algorithm would identify information as clinical (c). The biopsy does not meet the criteria for pathologic staging.*

**Example:** Endoscopies for cervix or bladder would be coded as 1 in this field and the staging algorithm would identify the information as clinical (c).

**Exception:** Lung cancer with mediastinoscopy showing direct extension into mediastinum.

*Code this field as 1. Staging algorithm would identify information as pathologic (p), because mediastinoscopy is defined as a pathologic procedure in TNM.*

- c. If the patient had surgery followed by other treatment(s), use code 3 or 9.
- d. If the size or extension of the tumor determined prior to treatment was the basis for neoadjuvant therapy, use code 5.
- e. If the size or extension of the tumor was greater after presurgical treatment than before treatment, use code 6. This code is likely to be used infrequently and maps to the “y” intercurrent treatment staging basis.

- f. If the patient had an autopsy, use code 2 if the diagnosis was known or suspected prior to death. Use code 8 if the malignancy was not known or suspected prior to death.
4. For sites and histologies for which no TNM schema has been defined, such as brain or Kaposi sarcoma, this field is always coded 9, Not Applicable. (See Table 6 in the General Instructions.) For any sites and histologies not listed in Table 6, code to the value that best reflects the diagnostic methods used, whether or not a stage is actually calculated for an individual case. In other words, do not use code 9 when a case has a histology that is excluded from staging but the site does have a TNM schema defined, for example, a sarcoma of the breast. In those cases, use code 9 only when the nature of the diagnostic methods is actually unknown.
5. Code 0 includes imaging studies such as standard radiography, special radiographic projections, tomography, computerized tomography (CT), ultrasonography (US), lymphography, angiography, scintigraphy (nuclear scans), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), positron emission tomography (PET) scans, spiral scanning (CT or MRI) and other non-invasive methods of examining tissues.
6. Codes 0-3 are oriented to the AJCC staging basis. In general, Code 1 includes microscopic analysis of tissue that is insufficient to meet the requirements for pathologic staging in the TNM system. However, pathologic staging requirements vary by site; for some site schemas, code 1 may be classified as pathologic. For specific classification rules, refer to the *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, sixth edition*. For example, a total cystectomy is required to pathologically stage a bladder cancer. Any tissue removed during another procedure, such as a transurethral resection of a bladder tumor, would not meet the requirements for pathologic staging and should be coded to 1 in this field. Code 1 also includes observations at surgery, such as an exploratory laparotomy in which unresectable pancreatic cancer is identified, where further tumor extension is not biopsied.
7. Code 3 is considered pathologic staging across all sites. For most schemas, use code 3 for a biopsy of tumor extension that meets the requirements for pathologic staging basis. In other words, according to TNM rules, if the biopsy documents the highest T category, the biopsy meets the requirements for pathologic staging basis and the CS Tumor Size/Ext Eval field should be coded to 3. For example, if a prostate cancer patient has a biopsy of the rectum that shows microscopic involvement of the rectal wall (T4), according to the *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, sixth edition* that patient meets the requirements for pathologic staging in the T category.
8. The Eval fields should be coded based on how the information was obtained, even if the information in the related field (Tumor Size, Regional Nodes, or Mets at Dx) is unknown. For example, even if it is not possible to determine the tumor size or extension and the Extension field is coded as 99, the registrar still knows what procedures were used to try to determine those fields. In other words, just because the tumor size is coded 999, the Eval field does not have to be coded 9.

## CS LYMPH NODES

Item Length: 2  
 NAACCR Item #: 2830  
 NAACCR Name: CS Lymph Nodes

**Description**

Identifies the regional lymph nodes involved with cancer at the time of diagnosis.

Code	Description	TNM Mapping	SS77 Mapping	SS2000 Mapping
00	None; no regional lymph node involvement	N0	None	None
	<b>SITE/HISTOLOGY-SPECIFIC CODES</b>			
99	Unknown; regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed; not stated in patient record	NX	U	U

**For schemas that do not use the CS Lymph Nodes field:**

Code	Description
88	Not applicable

**Instructions for Coding**

1. Record the specific regional lymph node chain farthest from the primary site that is involved by tumor either clinically or pathologically.
  - a. Regional lymph nodes are listed for each site/histology. In general, the regional lymph nodes in the chain(s) closest to the primary site have the lower codes. Nodes farther away from the primary or in farther lymph node chains have higher codes. Record the highest applicable code.  
**Exception:** The higher codes for 'Regional lymph nodes, NOS'; 'Lymph nodes, NOS'; 'Stated as N1, no other information'; 'Stated a N2a, no other information', and so forth, should only be used when there is no available information as to the name(s) of the regional nodes involved.  
**Example:** Peribronchial lymph nodes are positive on fine needle aspiration biopsy. Contralateral mediastinal mass noted on CT scan but not biopsied. Patient chooses radiation therapy as primary treatment.  
*Use the code for contralateral mediastinal lymph node involvement as it is higher than the code for peribronchial lymph nodes.*
  - b. Record involved regional lymph nodes from the pathology report, if it is available, when the patient receives no radiation or systemic treatment prior to surgery.
  - c. If there is a discrepancy between clinical information and pathologic information about the same lymph nodes, the pathologic information takes precedence if no preoperative treatment was administered.  
**Example:** Axillary lymphadenopathy stated as "suspicious for involvement" noted on physical exam. After axillary dissection, all lymph nodes are negative.  
*Code CS Lymph Nodes as 0, no regional lymph node involvement.*
  - d. *For inaccessible sites*, record CS Lymph Nodes as Code 00 (None) rather than Code 99 (Unknown) when the clinician proceeds with standard treatment of the primary site for clinically localized or early (for example, T1, T2) stage disease, since this action presumes that there are no involved regional lymph nodes that would otherwise alter the treatment approach. Code 99 can and should be

used in situations where there is reasonable doubt that the tumor is no longer localized and there is no documentation of involved regional lymph nodes.

- e. If there is direct extension of the primary tumor into a regional lymph node, record the involved node in this field.
- f. If the patient receives preoperative (neoadjuvant) systemic therapy (chemotherapy, hormone therapy, immunotherapy) or radiation therapy, code the farthest involved regional lymph nodes, based on information prior to surgery.

**Example:** Patient has a hard matted mass in the axilla (code 50) and a needle biopsy of the breast that confirms ductal carcinoma. Patient receives three months of chemotherapy. The pathology report from the modified radical mastectomy shows only scar tissue in the axilla with no involvement of axillary lymph nodes (Negative, code 00). *Code CS Lymph Nodes as 50 because the chemotherapy apparently “sterilized” the lymph nodes.*

- g. In the infrequent event that clinically involved regional lymph nodes do not respond to neoadjuvant treatment and are, in fact, more extensively involved after preoperative treatment as determined by the operative or pathology report, code the farthest extension and code CS Reg Nodes Eval as 6, based on pathology/operative report after treatment.

**Example:** Patient has needle biopsy-proven prostate cancer with no mention of involved lymph nodes on physical examination (Negative, code 00). He receives Lupron while deciding whether to undergo a radical prostatectomy. At the time of surgery, a laparoscopic pelvic node biopsy is reported to show metastases (Regional nodes involved, code 10) to lymph nodes and the prostatectomy is canceled.

*Code CS Lymph Nodes as 10 because the preoperative treatment (Lupron) had no effect on the lymph nodes.*

2. Use code 00 for lymph node involvement when the CS Extension is coded in situ, even if no lymph nodes are removed, since “in situ” by definition means noninvasive. If there is evidence of nodal involvement associated with a tumor described as in situ, it would indicate that an area of invasion was missed and the primary tumor is not an in situ lesion, so lymph nodes can be coded as appropriate for the case.
3. For solid tumors, the terms “fixed” or “matted” and “mass in the hilum, mediastinum, retroperitoneum, nd/or mesentery” (with no specific information as to tissue involved) are considered involvement of lymph nodes.
  - a. Any other terms, such as “palpable,” “enlarged,” “visible swelling,” “shotty,” or “lymph-adenopathy” should be ignored, unless there is a statement of involvement by the clinician.
 

**Exception:** The terms *adenopathy*, *enlargement*, and *mass in the hilum or mediastinum* should be coded as involvement for lung primaries only.
  - b. For lymphomas, *any* positive mention of lymph nodes indicates involvement of those lymph nodes.
  - c. Regional lymph nodes are not palpable for inaccessible sites such as bladder, kidney, prostate, esophagus, stomach, lung, liver, corpus uteri and ovary. The best description concerning regional lymph nodes will be on imaging studies or in the surgeon's evaluation at the time of exploratory surgery or definitive surgery. If regional lymph nodes for these inaccessible sites are not mentioned on imaging or exploratory surgery, they are presumed to be clinically negative.
  - d. The terms “homolateral,” “ipsilateral,” and “same side” are used interchangeably.
  - e. Any unidentified nodes included with the resected primary site specimen are to be coded as regional lymph nodes, NOS.
  - f. Where more specific categories are provided, the codes for “regional lymph node(s), NOS”; “lymph nodes, NOS”; and “Stated as N\_, no additional information” should be used *only* after an exhaustive search for more specific information.
4. When size of involved regional lymph nodes is required, code from pathology report, if available.
  - a. Code the size of the metastasis, not the entire node, unless otherwise stated in site-specific schemas. The size of the metastasis within the lymph node can be inferred if the size for the entire node falls within one of the codes; for example, a single involved node 1.5 cm in size can be coded to “single lymph node ≤ 2 cm” because the metastasis cannot be larger than 1.5 cm.

5. If the only indication of lymph node involvement in the record is the physician's statement of an N category from the TNM staging system or a stage from a site-specific staging system, such as Dukes' C, record the numerically lowest equivalent CS Lymph Nodes code for that N category.
  - a. If there is a discrepancy between documentation in the medical record and the physician's assignment of TNM, the documentation takes precedence. Cases of this type should be discussed with the physician who assigned the TNM.
  - b. If the information in the medical record is ambiguous or incomplete regarding the extent to which the tumor has spread, lymph node involvement may be inferred from the N category stated by the physician.
6. Some site or histology schemas include designations such as N1, NOS; N2, NOS, and other non-specific categories. The NOS is added when there is further breakdown of the category into subsets (such as N1a, N1b, N1c), but the correct subset cannot be determined. The NOS designation, which can appear in both the descriptions of codes and the mapping, is not official AJCC descriptive terminology. The NOS should be disregarded in reports and analyses when it is not a useful distinction. The data collector should only code to a category such as "Stated as N1 NOS" when the appropriate subset (e.g., N1a or N1b) cannot be determined.
7. For colon, rectosigmoid and rectum primaries, if there is a statement about tumor nodule(s) in the pericolic or perirectal fat, use the following guidelines for coding regional lymph node involvement:
  - a. Code as regional lymph node involvement if the nodule has a smooth contour.
  - b. Code as tumor extension if the nodule has an irregular contour.
8. It is strongly recommended that the choice of regional lymph node codes be documented in a related text field on the abstract.

#### **CODING REGIONAL LYMPH NODES FOR HEAD AND NECK SITES**

For head and neck sites, regional lymph node information is coded in several fields. The CS Lymph Nodes field contains information about the nodes involved, their number and laterality. Site-Specific Factors 1 and 2 are used to code the size of involved lymph nodes and the presence of extracapsular extension. Site-Specific Factors 3 through 6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved. See Figure 2a for the layout of Site-Specific Factors 3 through 6 and Figure 2b for the interpretation of a coded example.



Figure 2a. Layout of Site-Specific Factors for Head and Neck Sites

SSF 3	Levels I-III	$\overline{\text{I}}$	$\overline{\text{II}}$	$\overline{\text{III}}$
SSF 4	Levels IV-V, retropharyngeal (RP)	$\overline{\text{IV}}$	$\overline{\text{V}}$	$\overline{\text{RP}}$
SSF 5	Levels VI-VII, Facial (F)	$\overline{\text{VI}}$	$\overline{\text{VII}}$	$\overline{\text{F}}$
SSF 6	Other groups Parapharyngeal (PP), Parotid (PA), Suboccipital (S)	$\overline{\text{PP}}$	$\overline{\text{PA}}$	$\overline{\text{S}}$

Figure 2b. Example and Interpretation of Site-Specific Factors for Head and Neck Sites

*Example:* Left Radical Neck Dissection: 2 positive parotid node (< 3 cm with extra-capsular extension), 1 positive buccal (facial) node (2 cm), and 1 positive 2 cm submandibular node.

SSF 3	Levels I-III	$\frac{1}{\text{I}}$	$\frac{0}{\text{II}}$	$\frac{0}{\text{III}}$
SSF 4	Levels IV-V, retropharyngeal (RP)	$\frac{0}{\text{IV}}$	$\frac{0}{\text{V}}$	$\frac{0}{\text{RP}}$
SSF 5	Levels VI-VII, Facial (F)	$\frac{0}{\text{VI}}$	$\frac{0}{\text{VII}}$	$\frac{1}{\text{F}}$
SSF 6	Other groups Parapharyngeal (PP), Parotid (PA), Suboccipital (S)	$\frac{0}{\text{PP}}$	$\frac{1}{\text{PA}}$	$\frac{0}{\text{S}}$

Stored in database as

SSF 3      100  
 SSF 4      000  
 SSF 5      001  
 SSF 6      010

Interpretation

Level 1 only  
 All nodes neg  
 Facial nodes only  
 Parotid nodes only

**Unknown**

In Site-Specific Factors 3-6 for lymph node levels, use code 9 only when it is unknown if lymph nodes are involved. Within each of the Site-Specific Factors 3-6, do not code 9 in some positions and 0 or 1 in other positions. If specific information is available about the positive or negative status of some but not all nodes in any one level or group, assume that the rest of the nodes in the same Site-Specific Factor are negative and code accordingly.

**NOS**

When the only information available is “Regional nodes, NOS” or “Cervical nodes, NOS” or “Internal jugular lymph nodes, NOS” or “Lymph nodes, NOS,” code 0 in all digits of Site-Specific Factors 3-6.

*Example:* A carcinoma of the base of tongue involves bilateral submandibular nodes and left upper, mid-, and lower jugular nodes, the largest measuring 4 cm. There is no extracapsular extension. These are level I, II, III, and IV lymph nodes according to AJCC definitions. CS Lymph Nodes is coded 40 (bilateral or contralateral nodes). Site-Specific Factor 1 is coded 040 indicating the largest size. Site-Specific Factor 2 is coded 000 for no extracapsular extension. Site-Specific Factor 3 is coded 111, to show that levels I, II, and III are involved. Site-Specific Factor 4 is coded 100 to show that level IV is involved. Site-Specific Factors 5 and 6 are each coded 000, since no other nodes are involved.

*Example:* Laryngeal biopsy with squamous cell carcinoma, no other information available. CS Lymph Nodes is coded 99. Site-Specific factors 1-6 are each coded 999, since no information is available regarding lymph node involvement.

*Example:* Patient diagnosed elsewhere with carcinoma of oropharynx with cervical lymph node involvement. No other information available. CS Lymph Nodes is coded 50 (regional nodes, NOS, not stated if ipsilateral, bilateral, or contralateral, or if single or multiple). Site-specific Factors 1 and 2 are each coded 999. Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are each coded 000.

**Definitions of Levels for Head and Neck Sites**

The definitions of the levels and the lymph node chains included in each level are as follows:

**Level I** contains the submental and submandibular triangles bounded by the anterior and posterior bellies of the digastric muscle, and the hyoid bone inferiorly, and the body of the mandible superiorly.

Submandibular	Submaxillary	Submental
---------------	--------------	-----------

**Level II** contains the upper jugular lymph nodes and extends from the level of the skull base superiorly to the hyoid bone inferiorly.

Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)	Upper deep cervical	Upper jugular
-----------------------------------	---------------------	---------------

**Level III** contains the middle jugular lymph nodes from the hyoid bone superiorly to the level of the lower border of the cricoid cartilage inferiorly.

Middle deep cervical	Mid-jugular
-------------------------	-------------

**Level IV** contains the lower jugular lymph nodes from the level of the cricoid cartilage superiorly to the clavicle inferiorly.

Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)	Lower deep cervical	Lower jugular
------------------------------------	---------------------	---------------

**Level V** contains the lymph nodes in the posterior triangle bounded by the anterior border of the trapezius muscle posteriorly, the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle anteriorly, and the clavicle inferiorly. For descriptive purposes, Level V may be further subdivided into upper, middle, and lower levels corresponding to the superior and inferior planes that define Levels II, III, and IV.

Posterior cervical  
Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower, corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes)

**Level VI** contains the lymph nodes of the anterior central compartment from the hyoid bone superiorly to the suprasternal notch inferiorly. On each side, the lateral boundary is formed by the medial border of the carotid sheath.

Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal	Paratracheal Prelaryngeal (Delphian)	Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal
--	---	------------------------------------

**Level VII** contains the lymph nodes inferior to the suprasternal notch in the superior mediastinum.

Upper mediastinal

**Other groups**

Buccinator (facial) Nasolabial Parapharyngeal	Periparotid and intraparotid Preauricular	Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital
---	---	----------------------------------

**CODING REGIONAL LYMPH NODES FOR BREAST**

Coding regional lymph node involvement for breast cancers is more complex than for many other sites, especially when dealing with isolated tumor cells (ITCs) and micrometastases. The following may help clarify the reasons behind the codes in CS Lymph Nodes and Site-Specific Factors 3-5. For a more detailed explanation, see the section in the breast chapter of the *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, 6<sup>th</sup> edition*, called "Considerations for Evidence-Based Changes to the *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, 6<sup>th</sup> edition*," beginning on page 229.

**Isolated Tumor Cells (ITCs).** Pathologists can detect isolated tumor cells (ITCs) spread from a breast cancer into regional lymph nodes. These are very small deposits of tumor cells, so small that they are *not* considered significant for assigning stage. They usually do not show evidence of malignant activity in the nodes, such as proliferation or stromal reaction. To be considered ITCs, they must be single tumor cells or small clusters not more than 0.2 mm. As more data are collected about these ITCs, their prognostic significance may be better understood. **At this time, nodes with only these ITCs are NOT considered positive nodes.** These ITCs are most often found using immunohistochemistry tests on sentinel lymph node specimens. The ITCs may sometimes also be seen on routine H&E-stained sections.

**Hematoxylin and Eosin (H & E).** (from “Hematoxylin & Eosin”: (The Routine Stain)), by H. Skip Brown, BA, HT(ASCP), from: <http://www.sigmaaldrich.com/img/assets/7361/Primer-H&Emay04.pdf>

In histology, the standard or routine stain is the hematoxylin and eosin stain, better known as the “H&E” stain. With rare exceptions, every specimen being examined will first receive an H&E stain to give the laboratorian a visible look at the nucleus of the cells and their present state of activity. With most disease states there is abnormal growth and/or division in the nucleus of the cells. The hematoxylin and eosin stain uses two separate dyes, one staining the nucleus and the other staining the cytoplasm and connective tissue. Hematoxylin is a dark purplish dye that will stain the chromatin (nuclear material) within the nucleus, leaving it a deep purplish-blue color. Eosin is an orangish-pink to red dye that stains the cytoplasmic material including connective tissue and collagen, and leaves an orange-pink counterstain. This counterstain acts as a sharp contrast to the purplish-blue nuclear stain of the nucleus, and helps identify other entities in the tissues such as cell membrane (border), red blood cells, and fluid.

**Immunohistochemistry (IHC).** Immunohistochemistry (IHC) tests use antibodies to stain for proteins of interest in tissue specimens. The IHC test for metastatic breast cancer in lymph nodes uses antibodies to cytokeratin, so the test may be called “cytokeratin staining.” Other IHC tests are used on the primary breast tumor, rather than the lymph nodes, to assess estrogen and progesterone receptors and HER-2 neu (human epidermal growth factor receptor). In SSF 4, code only IHC results for ITCs in LYMPH NODES.

**Molecular Study: Reverse Transcriptase/Polymerase Chain Reaction (RT-PCR).** An even more sensitive test used to detect ITCs in lymph nodes is RT-PCR, a molecular test looking for expression of genes of interest. This test is rarely done.

**Micrometastasis.** When the tumor deposits in the lymph nodes are larger than 0.2 mm but not larger than 2.0 mm, they are defined as micrometastasis. **Nodes with micrometastasis ARE considered positive for staging.**

In coding CS Lymph Nodes and Site-Specific Factors 3-5, the important things to abstract are the size of the tumor detected in the lymph nodes and the methods of detection. The table below may help in coding this information. Note that the table includes codes for axillary nodes only, not internal mammary nodes. The table is followed by examples to illustrate likely coding situations.

To use the table, identify the group (numbered I-VI) of applicable rows based on the information in column 2 that best represents the information in the case. Within that group, find the row or rows that represent the information in the case, and read right to the last four columns to find the codes to use. The group numbers are for convenience in using this chart only, and do not correlate with any anatomic groups of nodes.

GIVEN THIS INFORMATION...			USE THESE CODES...				
		Row Number	IHC and/or Mol Studies Done, or Method of Detection/ Verification	CS Lymph Nodes	SSF3 (Number pos axillary nodes)	SSF4 (IHC)	SSF5 (Mol)
I.	Clinical information only; no pathological information used to code CS Lymph Nodes; no nodes examined pathologically, nodes clinically NEGATIVE	1.	None; does not apply	00	098	000	000

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

II.	Clinical information only; no pathological information used to code CS Lymph Nodes; no nodes examined pathologically, nodes clinically POSITIVE	2.	None; does not apply	50, 60, or 99	098	888	888	
III.	Nodes examined pathologically, nodes negative; no Isolated Tumor Cells (ITCs)  <b>NOTE:</b> SSF 4 and 5 are coded independently of each other.	3.	Immunohistochemistry (IHC) (cytokeratin staining) not done, <b>OR</b> unknown if done	00	000	000		
		4.	IHC done, neg for tumor	00	000	001		
		5.	Molecular studies not done, <b>OR</b> unknown if done	00	000		000	
		6.	Molecular studies done, neg for tumor	00	000		001	
IV.	Nodes examined pathologically, Isolated Tumor Cells (ITCs) ONLY; Single tumor cells, or clusters ≤ 0.2mm <b>OR</b> Immunohistochemistry (IHC) pos, NOS  <b>NOTE:</b> SSF 4 and 5 are coded independently of each other.	7.	H&E (routine stained slides)	05	000	888	888	
		8.	H&E neg, immunohistochemistry (IHC) (cytokeratin staining) not done, OR unknown if done	00	000	000		
		9.	H&E neg, IHC done, neg for ITCs	00	000	001		
		10.	H&E neg, IHC done, pos for ITCs	00	00	002		
		11.	H&E neg, IHC done, pos but size of deposits not stated	00	000	009		
		12.	H&E neg, molecular studies not done, or unknown if done	00	000		000	
		13.	H&E neg, molecular studies done, neg for tumor	00	000		001	
		14.	H&E neg, molecular studies done, pos for ITCs	00	000		002	

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

V.	Nodes examined pathologically Tumor > 0.2mm and ≤ 2.0mm (Micrometastasis)	15.	H&E neg, micromets on IHC (cytokeratin staining) ONLY	13	001-097	888	888
		16.	H&E pos for micromets	15	001-097	888	888
VI.	Nodes examined pathologically Tumor > 2.0mm; positive lymph nodes	17.	Does not apply	25 or higher	001-097	888	888

## Examples for Each Group

### Group I Example

1. Nodes clinically negative, patient refused further workup. [Row number 1]

### Group II Examples

1. Fixed and matted ipsilateral axillary nodes clinically, patient had pre-op chemotherapy. Subsequent modified radical mastectomy showed negative axillary nodes. (CS Reg Nodes Eval = 5 in this case.) [Row number 2]
2. Axillary nodes clinically positive, patient refused further workup. [Row number 2]

### Group III Examples

1. Sentinel nodes neg on H&E. IHC (cytokeratin stain) performed, negative for ITCs. Molecular studies not done. [Rows 4 and 5]
2. Modified radical mastectomy, path report with 12 lymph nodes neg for tumor, no special stains, cytokeratin, IHC, or molecular studies performed on lymph nodes. [Rows 3 and 5]
3. Sentinel nodes neg on H&E. Unknown if IHC done. RT-PCR done, negative for ITCs. [Rows 3 and 6]

### Group IV Examples

1. Sentinel nodes neg on H&E. IHC (cytokeratin stain) performed, positive for ITCs. Unknown if molecular studies done. [Rows 10 and 12]
2. Sentinel nodes initially neg on H&E. IHC performed, positive for ITCs. No molecular studies done. ITCs then verified on H&E slides of the sentinel nodes. [Row 7 ONLY]
3. Class 3 case abstracted from clinical history. Sentinel nodes neg on H&E. IHC on sentinel nodes was positive, NOS. Molecular studies not mentioned. [Rows 11 and 12]
4. Sentinel nodes neg on H&E. Cytokeratin stain showed clusters of tumor cells in the node up to 0.15 mm. RT-PCR was pos for ITCs. [Rows 10 and 14]
5. Sentinel nodes neg on H&E. Unknown if IHC performed. RT-PCR study done, neg for ITCs. [Rows 8 and 13]
6. Sentinel nodes neg on H&E. IHC and RT-PCR negative for tumor. [Rows 9 and 13]

### Group V Examples

1. Path report, final diagnosis: "Lymph Nodes: one of three sentinel lymph nodes positive for capsular micrometastases." Microscopic description: "Sections of the first submitted sentinel lymph node demonstrate normal nodal architecture; however, on cytokeratin stain, micrometastases are noted in the capsule." [Row 15]
2. Path report, final diagnosis: "Lymph Nodes: one of three sentinel lymph nodes positive for capsular micrometastases." Microscopic description: "Sections of the first submitted sentinel lymph node demonstrate micrometastases in the capsule." No special studies are mentioned in the report. [Row 16]

### Group VI Example

1. Axilla neg on palpation. Modified radical mastectomy, 2/14 nodes positive. Largest metastasis 0.8 cm. [Row 17]

## CS REG NODES EVAL

Item Length: 1  
 NAACCR Item #: 2840  
 NAACCR Name: CS Reg Node Eval

## Description

Records how the code for the item "CS Lymph Nodes" was determined, based on the diagnostic methods employed. This field is not required by SEER.

Code	Description	Staging Basis
0	No regional lymph nodes removed for examination. Evaluation based on physical examination, imaging, or other non-invasive clinical evidence. No autopsy evidence used.	c
1	No regional lymph nodes removed for examination. Evaluation based on endoscopic examination, diagnostic biopsy including fine needle aspiration of lymph node(s) or other invasive techniques, including surgical observation without biopsy. No autopsy evidence used. <i>Does not meet criteria for AJCC pathologic staging.</i>	c
2	No regional lymph nodes removed for examination, but evidence derived from autopsy (tumor was suspected or diagnosed prior to autopsy).	p
3	Regional lymph nodes removed for examination (removal of at least 1 lymph node) WITHOUT pre-surgical systemic treatment or radiation OR lymph nodes removed for examination, unknown if pre-surgical systemic treatment or radiation performed <i>Meets criteria for AJCC pathologic staging.</i>	p
5	Regional lymph nodes removed for examination WITH pre-surgical systemic treatment or radiation, and lymph node evaluation based on clinical evidence.	c
6	Regional lymph nodes removed for examination WITH pre-surgical systemic treatment or radiation, BUT lymph node evaluation based on pathologic evidence.	y
8	Evidence from autopsy; tumor was unsuspected or undiagnosed prior to autopsy.	a
9	Unknown if lymph nodes removed for examination Not assessed; cannot be assessed Unknown if assessed Not documented in patient record <i>For sites that have no TNM staging:</i> Not applicable	c

## Instructions for Coding

- Select the CS Reg Nodes Eval code that documents the report or procedure from which the information about the farthest involved regional lymph nodes was obtained; this may not be the numerically highest eval code.

**Example:** Modified radical neck dissection for hypopharyngeal cancer shows one lower jugular node involved (CS Reg LN code 10, Eval code 3). Physical exam shows hard, matted scalene (transverse cervical) node presumed to contain metastasis (CS Reg LN code 32, Eval code 0). Code CS Reg Nodes Eval as 0 since the scalene node involvement was determined clinically rather than by examination of tissue.



2. For sites/histologies where no TNM schema has been defined, such as brain or Kaposi sarcoma, this field is always coded 9, Not Applicable. (See Table 6 in the General Instructions). For any sites and histologies not listed in Table 6, code to the value that best reflects the diagnostic methods used, whether or not a stage is actually calculated for an individual case. In other words, do not use code 9 when a case has a histology that is excluded from staging but the site does have a TNM schema defined, for example, a sarcoma of the breast. In those cases, use code 9 only when the nature of the diagnostic methods is actually unknown.
  
3. Select the code that best explains how the information in the CS Lymph Nodes field was determined.
  - a. If the patient had no removal of lymph node(s), use code 0, 1, or 9.
 

**Example 1:** Prostate cancer with laparoscopic lymph node biopsy showing involved nodes; radical prostatectomy canceled.  
Code CS Reg Node Eval as 3. Staging algorithm would identify information as pathologic (p). According to AJCC, a positive biopsy of one or more regional lymph nodes is sufficient to meet the pathologic staging basis for prostate cancer.

**Example 2:** Lung cancer with CT scan or MRI showing involved contralateral mediastinal nodes. Code CS Reg Node Eval as 0. Staging algorithm would identify information as clinical (c).
  - b. If the patient had removal of lymph node(s) surgery followed by other treatment(s), use code 3 or 9.
  - c. If the patient receives preoperative (neoadjuvant) systemic therapy (chemotherapy, hormone therapy, immunotherapy) or radiation therapy, the clinical status of lymph nodes takes precedence (code 5).
  - d. If the size, number or extension of regional lymph node involvement determined prior to treatment was the basis for neoadjuvant therapy, use code 5. However, if more extensive tumor is found during lymph node examination after neoadjuvant therapy, use code 6.
  - e. If the patient had an autopsy, use code 2 if the diagnosis was known or suspected prior to death. Use code 8 if the malignancy was not known or suspected prior to death.
  
4. Code 0 includes imaging studies such as standard radiography, special radiographic projections, tomography, computerized tomography (CT), ultrasonography (US), lymphography, angiography, scintigraphy (nuclear scans), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), positron emission tomography (PET) scans, spiral scanning (CT or MRI) and other non-invasive methods of examining tissues.
  
5. Codes 0-3 are oriented to the AJCC staging basis. Code 1 includes microscopic analysis of tissue insufficient to meet the requirements for pathologic staging in the TNM system. For example, a needle biopsy of an axillary lymph node will document that a lymph node is involved by breast cancer, but does not meet the requirement for removal of a sufficient number of lymph nodes so that the highest N stage can be assessed. Pathologic staging requirements vary by site; for some site schemas, code 1 may be classified as pathologic. For specific classification rules, refer to the *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, sixth edition*. Code 1 also includes observations at surgery, such as abdominal exploration at the time of a colon resection, where regional lymph nodes are not biopsied.

6. Code 3 maps to pathologic staging across all sites. Use code 3 if the lymph node procedure meets the requirements for pathologic staging basis of regional lymph nodes. The requirements vary among sites as to the location and number of lymph nodes involved, the size of the involved nodes, and other characteristics. For prostate cancer, a positive biopsy of a single regional lymph node is sufficient to assign CS Reg Nodes Eval code 3 to the case.
7. The Eval fields should be coded based on how the information was obtained, even if the information in the related field (Tumor Size, Regional Nodes, or Mets at Dx) is unknown. For example, even if it is not possible to determine the tumor size or extension and the Extension field is coded as 99, the registrar still knows what procedures were used to try to determine those fields. In other words, just because the tumor size is coded 999, the Eval field does not have to be coded 9.

## REGIONAL NODES POSITIVE

Item Length: 2  
 NAACCR Item #: 820  
 NAACCR Name: Regional Nodes Positive

**Description**

Records the exact number of regional lymph nodes examined by the pathologist and found to contain metastases.

Code	Description
00	All nodes examined are negative.
01-89	1-89 nodes are positive. (Code exact number of nodes positive)
90	90 or more nodes are positive.
95	Positive aspiration or core biopsy of lymph node(s) was performed.
97	Positive nodes are documented, but the number is unspecified.
98	No nodes were examined.
99	It is unknown whether nodes are positive; not applicable; not stated in patient record.

**Instructions for Coding**

- Record information about only regional lymph nodes in this field. Involved distant lymph nodes should be coded in the "CS Mets at Dx" field.
- Rules for coding Regional Nodes Positive are the same for both in situ and invasive cases.
- This field is based on pathologic information only. If no lymph nodes were removed for examination, or if a lymph node drainage area was removed but no lymph nodes were found, code as 98.
- Record the total number of regional lymph nodes removed and found to be positive by pathologic examination.
  - The number of regional lymph nodes positive is cumulative from all procedures that removed lymph nodes through the completion of surgeries in the first course of treatment.
  - This field is to be recorded regardless of whether the patient received preoperative treatment.
- Any combination of positive aspirated, biopsied, sampled or dissected lymph nodes should be coded to 97 if the number of involved nodes cannot be determined on the basis of cytology or histology.
- For the following primary sites and histologies, the Regional Nodes Positive field is always coded as 99.
  - Placenta
  - Brain and Cerebral Meninges
  - Other Parts of Central Nervous System
  - Hodgkin and non-Hodgkin Lymphoma
  - Hematopoietic, Reticuloendothelial, Immunoproliferative and Myeloproliferative Neoplasms
  - Other and Ill-Defined Primary Sites
  - Unknown Primary Site

**REGIONAL NODES EXAMINED**

Item Length: 2

NAACCR Item #: 830

NAACCR Name: Regional Nodes Examined

**Description**

Records the total number of regional lymph nodes that were removed and examined by the pathologist.

Code	Description
00	No nodes were examined.
01-89	1-89 nodes were examined. (Code the exact number of regional lymph nodes examined.)
90	90 or more nodes were examined.
95	No regional nodes were removed, but aspiration or core biopsy of regional nodes was performed.
96	Regional lymph node removal was documented as a sampling, and the number of nodes is unknown/not stated.
97	Regional lymph node removal was documented as a dissection, and the number of nodes is unknown/not stated.
98	Regional lymph nodes were surgically removed, but the number of lymph nodes is unknown/not stated and not documented as a sampling or dissection; nodes were examined, but the number is unknown.
99	It is unknown whether nodes were examined; not applicable or negative; not stated in patient record.

**Instructions for Coding**

- Record information about only regional lymph nodes in this field. Distant lymph node information should be coded in the "CS Mets at Dx" field.
- Rules for coding Regional Nodes Examined are the same for in situ and invasive cases.
- This field is based on pathologic information only. If no lymph nodes were removed for examination, or if a lymph node drainage area was removed but no lymph nodes were found, code as 00. If it is unknown whether nodes were removed or examined, code as 99.
- Record the total number of regional lymph nodes removed and examined by the pathologist.
  - The number of regional lymph nodes examined is cumulative from all procedures that removed lymph nodes through the completion of surgeries in the first course of treatment.
  - If lymph nodes are aspirated and other lymph nodes are removed, use code 98.
  - This field is to be recorded regardless of whether the patient received preoperative treatment.
- If a lymph node biopsy was performed, code the number of nodes removed, if known. If the number of nodes removed by biopsy is not known, use code 96.
- For the following primary sites and histologies, the Regional Nodes Examined field is always coded as 99.
  - Brain and Cerebral Meninges
  - Hematopoietic, Reticuloendothelial, Immunoproliferative and Myeloproliferative Neoplasms
  - Hodgkin and non-Hodgkin Lymphoma
  - Other and Ill-Defined Primary Sites
  - Other Parts of Central Nervous System
  - Placenta
  - Unknown Primary Site

## CS METS AT DX

Item Length: 2  
 NAACCR Item #: 2850  
 NAACCR Name: CS Mets at Dx

**Description**

Identifies the distant site(s) of metastatic involvement at time of diagnosis.

Code	Description	TNM Mapping	SS77 Mapping	SS2000 Mapping
00	No; none	M0	None	None
10	Distant lymph node(s)	M1	D	D
40	Distant metastases except code 10 Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis	M1	D	D
	<b>SITE/HISTOLOGY-SPECIFIC CODES WHERE NEEDED</b>			
50	(40) + (10)	M1	D	D
99	Unknown; distant metastasis cannot be assessed; not stated in patient record	MX	U	U

**For schemas that do not use the CS Mets at Dx field:**

Code	Description
88	Not applicable

**Instructions for Coding**

1. This field represents distant metastases (the TNM M component or distant stage in Summary Staging) at the time of diagnosis. In other words, when the patient was diagnosed, tumor had already spread indirectly (through vascular or lymph channels) to a site remote from the primary tumor.

**Note:** The structure of the CS Mets at Dx field is based on the M category of TNM. In some schemas, there may be additional items in CS Extension or CS Lymph Nodes that map to distant stage in Summary Staging (77 and/or 2000) and there may be some items in CS Mets at Dx that map to regional stage in Summary Staging. Regardless of where such items are recorded, the staging algorithms will properly account for the information.

2. Assign the highest applicable code for metastasis at diagnosis, whether the determination was clinical or pathological and whether or not the patient had any preoperative systemic therapy.

3. Metastasis known to have developed after the extent of disease was established (also referred to as progression of disease) should not be recorded in the CS Mets at Dx field.
4. Record CS Mets at Dx as Code 00 (None) rather than Code 99 (Unknown) when the clinician proceeds with standard treatment of the primary site for clinically localized or early (for example, T1, T2) stage disease, since this action presumes that there are no distant metastasis that would otherwise alter the treatment approach. Code 99 can and should be used in situations where there is reasonable doubt that the tumor is no longer localized and there is no documentation of distant metastases.
5. If the only indication of extension in the record is the physician's statement of an M category from the TNM staging system or a stage from a site-specific staging system, such as Dukes' D, record the numerically lowest equivalent extension code for that M category. In most cases, this will be 40, Distant metastasis, NOS.
6. If the information in the medical record is ambiguous or incomplete regarding the extent to which the tumor has spread, the extent of disease may be inferred from the M category stated by the physician.
7. Some site or histology schemas include a designation of M1, NOS. The NOS is added when there is further breakdown of the category into subsets (such as M1a, M1b, M1c), but the correct subset cannot be determined. The NOS designation, which can appear in both the descriptions of codes and the mapping, is not official AJCC descriptive terminology. The NOS should be disregarded in reports and analyses when it is not a useful distinction. The data collector should only code to a category such as "Stated as M1 NOS" when the appropriate subset (such as M1a or M1b) cannot be determined.
8. It is strongly recommended that the choice of distant lymph nodes and/or distant metastasis codes be documented in a related text field on the abstract.

## CS METS EVAL

Item Length: 1  
 NAACCR Item #: 2860  
 NAACCR Name: CS Mets Eval

## Description

Records how the code for the item "CS Mets at Dx" was determined based on the diagnostic methods employed. This field is not required by SEER.

Code	Description	Staging Basis
0	No pathologic examination of metastatic tissue performed. Evaluation of distant metastasis based on physical examination, imaging examination, and/or other non-invasive clinical evidence. No autopsy evidence used.	c
1	No pathologic examination of metastatic tissue performed. Evaluation of distant metastasis based on endoscopic examination or other invasive technique, including surgical observation without biopsy. No autopsy evidence used. <i>Does not meet criteria for AJCC pathologic staging of distant metastasis.</i>	c
2	No pathologic examination of metastatic tissue done prior to death, but evidence derived from autopsy (tumor was suspected or diagnosed prior to autopsy).	p
3	Pathologic examination of metastatic tissue performed WITHOUT pre-surgical systemic treatment or radiation <b>OR</b> pathologic examination of metastatic tissue performed, unknown if pre-surgical systemic treatment or radiation performed <i>Meets criteria for AJCC pathologic staging of distant metastasis.</i>	p
5	Pathologic examination of metastatic tissue performed WITH pre-surgical systemic treatment or radiation, and metastasis based on clinical evidence.	c
6	Pathologic examination of metastatic tissue performed WITH pre-surgical systemic treatment or radiation, BUT metastasis based on pathologic evidence.	y
8	Evidence from autopsy AND tumor was unsuspected or undiagnosed prior to autopsy.	a
9	Not assessed; cannot be assessed Unknown if assessed Not documented in patient record <i>For sites with no TNM staging:</i> Not applicable	c

## Instructions for Coding

- One of the uses of the CS Mets Eval field is to assign a "c" or "p" to the M category derived from the CS Mets at DX field. Since both clinical and pathologic evidence might be available for assessing distant metastasis, the coding of the Eval field can be confusing. The goal is to assign the Eval code that indicates the best evidence used to determine the M category. Coding of the Eval field thus requires that the abstractor take note of the M category that will be derived from the code in the CSMets at DX field and then use the following guidelines to determine the best Eval code to assign.

- a. If M0 will be derived (i.e., no distant metastasis are coded), then choose an Eval code that will derive a “c” staging basis. There is no category of pM0, because it is impossible to disprove all possible sites of metastasis pathologically.

**Example:** Cecum carcinoma with negative chest X-ray and negative liver biopsy. CS Mets at DX is coded 00 (None), which maps to M0. CS Mets Eval is coded 1 (Evaluation of distant metastasis based on endoscopic examination or other invasive technique, including surgical observation without biopsy), which maps to the “c” staging basis.

- b. If MX will be derived (i.e., CS Mets at DX is coded 99), then choose an Eval code that will derive a “c” staging basis. The appropriate code might be 9 (Unknown) or might be another code if workup was done but the results were not definitively positive or negative.

**Example:** Cecum carcinoma abstracted from a pathology report of biopsy only, no clinical data or surgical observations available, CS Mets at DX coded 99 (Unknown) which will map to MX. CS Mets Eval is coded 9 (Unknown), which maps to the “c” staging basis.

**Example:** Lung cancer diagnosed by imaging. Patient has behavior changes, and brain imaging cannot rule out metastases. Patient is not a surgical candidate. CS Mets at DX is coded 99 (Unknown) which maps to MX. CS Mets Eval is coded 0 (imaging), which maps to the “c” staging basis.

- c. If M1 will be derived (i.e., there is disease present that is coded in the CS Mets at DX field) and there are no subcategories of M1, such as M1a and M1b, then determine if there was any pathological evidence for the M1 category. If so, select an Eval code that will derive a “p” staging basis. If there was only clinical evidence of the M1 disease, select an Eval code that will derive a “c” staging basis.

**Example:** Cecum carcinoma with negative chest X-ray and positive liver biopsy. CS Mets at DX is coded 40 (Distant metastasis except distant nodes), which maps to M1, and there are no subcategories of M for the colon schema. CS Mets Eval is coded 3 (Pathologic examination of metastatic tissue performed WITHOUT pre-surgical systemic treatment or radiation OR pathologic examination of metastatic tissue performed, unknown if pre-surgical systemic treatment or radiation performed), which maps to the “p” staging basis.

**Example:** Cecum carcinoma with positive chest X-ray and negative liver biopsy. CS Mets at DX is coded 40 (Distant metastasis except distant nodes), which maps to M1, and there are no subcategories of M for the colon schema. CS Mets Eval is coded 0 (No pathologic examination of metastatic tissue performed. Evaluation based on physical examination, imaging examination, and/or other non-invasive clinical evidence. No autopsy evidence used), which maps to the “c” staging basis.

- d. If a specific subcategory of M1 will be derived (such as M1a, etc.), then determine if there was any pathological evidence for the specific subcategory. If so, select an Eval code that will derive a “p” staging basis. If there was only clinical evidence of the subcategory disease, select an Eval code that will derive a “c” staging basis. In the latter case there may have been pathological evidence of a lower M subcategory, but this is not considered in assigning the Eval code.

**Example:** Prostate carcinoma with the following:

Involvement	CS Mets at DX Code	TNM
Positive biopsy of aortic lymph node (distant node)	Code 12	pM1a
Positive bone imaging	Code 30	cM1b
Positive brain imaging	Code 40	cM1c
All of the above	Codes 12 + 30 + 40 = Code 55	cM1c



To code CS Mets at DX, follow the general rule to code the highest applicable code, even though there is pathological evidence of metastases. CS Mets at DX is coded 55, which combines the codes for the lymph node, bone, and brain involvement. Code 55 maps to M1c. There is no pathological evidence for the subcategory of M1c (the only pathological evidence is for subcategory M1a). CS Mets Eval is coded 0 (imaging), which maps to the “c” staging basis. The positive lymph node would map to M1a, a lower M subcategory, so do not base the Eval code on that.

**Example:** Prostate carcinoma with positive biopsy of aortic lymph node (distant node), negative bone scan, and negative brain scan. CS Mets at DX is coded 12 (distant lymph node), which maps to M1a. CS Mets Eval is coded 3 (Pathologic examination of metastatic tissue performed WITHOUT pre-surgical systemic treatment or radiation OR pathologic examination of metastatic tissue performed, unknown if pre-surgical systemic treatment or radiation performed), which maps to the “p” staging basis.

2. For sites and histologies for which no TNM schema has been defined, such as brain or Kaposi sarcoma, this field is always coded 9, Not Applicable. (See Table 6 in the General Instructions.) For any sites and histologies not listed in Table 6, code to the value that best reflects the diagnostic methods used, whether or not a stage is actually calculated for an individual case. In other words, do not use code 9 when a case has a histology that is excluded from staging but the site does have a TNM schema defined, for example, a sarcoma of the breast. In those cases, use code 9 only when the nature of the diagnostic methods is actually unknown.
3. If the patient receives preoperative (neoadjuvant) systemic therapy (chemotherapy, hormone therapy, immunotherapy) or radiation therapy, the clinical status of metastases at diagnosis takes precedence (code 5), unless the pathologic evidence is more extensive (code 6).
4. Code 0 includes imaging studies such as standard radiography, special radiographic projections, tomography, computerized tomography (CT), ultrasonography (US), lymphography, angiography, scintigraphy (nuclear scans), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), positron emission tomography (PET), spiral scanning (CT or MRI) and other non-invasive methods of examining tissues.
5. Code 1 includes endoscopy and observations at surgery, such as abdominal exploration at the time of a colon resection, where distant metastasis is not biopsied.
6. AJCC does not recognize a pathologic M0 category since it is not possible to rule out all possible metastatic sites. Therefore, if the patient has a biopsy or removal of a distant site and the pathology report is negative, generally use Eval code 1, because this does not meet the criteria for pathologic staging.

## CS SITE-SPECIFIC FACTOR 1

Item Length: 3  
 NAACCR Item #: 2880  
 NAACCR Name: CS Site-Specific Factor 1

**Description**

Identifies additional information needed to generate stage, or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Code	Description
000	None
	<b>SITE/HISTOLOGY-SPECIFIC CODES</b>
999	Unknown; [site-specific title] cannot be assessed; Not documented in patient record

**For schemas that do not use this site-specific factor:**

Code	Description
888	Not applicable for this site

**Instructions for Coding**

1. If there is no site/histology-specific factor for a schema, code 888.
2. The following primary sites/histologies use Site Specific Factor 1 to code information. See the site-specific schemas for acceptable codes and their definitions.

**Site/Histology**

Head and neck\*  
 Colon  
 Rectosigmoid, rectum  
 Liver  
 Pleura  
 Malignant Melanoma of Skin,  
 Vulva, Penis, Scrotum  
 Mycosis Fungoides  
 Breast  
 Ovary  
 Placenta  
 Prostate  
 Testis  
 Thyroid

**Factor**

Size of Lymph Nodes  
 Carcinoembryonic Antigen (CEA)  
 Carcinoembryonic Antigen (CEA)  
 Alpha Fetoprotein (AFP)  
 Pleural Effusion  
 Measured Thickness (Depth), Breslow's  
 Measurement  
 Peripheral Blood Involvement  
 Estrogen Receptor Assay (ERA)  
 Carbohydrate Antigen 125 (CA-125)  
 Prognostic Scoring Index  
 Prostate Specific Antigen Laboratory Value  
 (PSA Lab Value)  
 Alpha Fetoprotein (AFP)  
 Solitary vs. Multifocal

\* Head and neck includes the following schemas: upper lip; lower lip; other lip; base of tongue; anterior tongue; upper gum; lower gum and retromolar trigone; other gum; floor of mouth; hard palate; soft palate/uvula; other mouth; buccal mucosa; parotid gland; submandibular gland; other salivary glands; oropharynx; anterior surface of epiglottis; nasopharynx; pyriform sinus/ hypopharynx; other pharynx; nasal cavity; middle ear; maxillary sinus; ethmoid sinus; other sinus; glottic larynx; supraglottic larynx; subglottic larynx; other larynx

**Site/Histology**

Melanoma of Conjunctiva  
Melanoma of Choroid  
Melanoma of Iris and Ciliary Body  
Retinoblastoma  
Brain  
Other Endocrine  
Other CNS  
Kaposi Sarcoma  
Lymphoma

**Factor**

Measured Thickness (Depth), Breslow's Measurement  
Measured Thickness (Depth), Breslow's Measurement  
Measured Thickness (Depth), Breslow's Measurement  
Extension Evaluated at Enucleation  
WHO Grade  
WHO Grade  
WHO Grade  
Associated with HIV/AIDS  
Associated with HIV/AIDS

3. Code 000 Not done is used when there is a statement in the record that a test was not performed.
  - a. If there is no report of a lab test in the patient record, code as 999 Unknown; Not documented in patient record.
  - b. For Kaposi sarcoma, if AIDS status is not documented, code as 999 Unknown rather than 002, Not Present.

## CS SITE-SPECIFIC FACTOR 2

Item Length: 3  
 NAACCR Item #: 2890  
 NAACCR Name: CS Site-Specific Factor 2

**Description**

Identifies additional information needed to generate stage, or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Code	Description
000	None
	<b>SITE/HISTOLOGY-SPECIFIC CODES</b>
999	Unknown; [site-specific title] cannot be assessed; Not documented in patient record

**For schemas that do not use this site-specific factor:**

Code	Description
888	Not applicable for this site

**Instructions for Coding**

1. If there is no site/histology-specific factor for a schema, code 888.
2. The following primary sites use Site Specific Factor 2 to code information. See the site-specific schemas for acceptable codes and their definitions.

**Site/Histology**

Head and neck\*

Liver

Malignant Melanoma of Skin,

Vulva, Penis, Scrotum

Breast

Prostate

Testis

Hodgkin and non-Hodgkin Lymphoma

**Factor**Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for  
Head and Neck

Fibrosis Score

Ulceration

Progesterone Receptor Assay (PRA)

Prostate Specific Antigen (PSA)

Human Chorionic Gonadotropin (HCG)

Symptoms at Diagnosis

\* Head and neck includes the following schemas: upper lip; lower lip; other lip; base of tongue; anterior tongue; upper gum; lower gum and retromolar trigone; other gum; floor of mouth; hard palate; soft palate/uvula; other mouth; buccal mucosa; parotid gland; submandibular gland; other salivary glands; oropharynx; anterior surface of epiglottis; nasopharynx; pyriform sinus/ hypopharynx; other pharynx; nasal cavity; middle ear; maxillary sinus; ethmoid sinus; other sinus; glottic larynx; supraglottic larynx; subglottic larynx; other larynx

3. Code 000 Not done is used when there is a statement in the record that a test was not performed.
  - a. If there is no report of a lab test in the health record, code as 999 Unknown; Not documented in patient record.
  - b. For malignant melanoma of skin, if ulceration is not mentioned in the pathology report, code as 000 No ulceration present.

## CS SITE-SPECIFIC FACTOR 3

Item Length: 3  
 NAACCR Item #: 2900  
 NAACCR Name: CS Site-Specific Factor 3

**Description**

Identifies additional information needed to generate stage, or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Code	Description
000	None
	<b>SITE/HISTOLOGY-SPECIFIC CODES</b>
999	Unknown; [site-specific title] cannot be assessed; Not documented in patient record

**For schemas that do not use this site-specific factor:**

Code	Description
888	Not applicable for this site

**Instructions for Coding**

1. If there is no site/histology-specific factor for a schema, code 888.
2. The following primary sites use Site Specific Factor 3 to code information. See the site-specific schemas for acceptable codes and their definitions.

**Site/Histology**

Head and Neck\*  
 Malignant Melanoma of Skin,  
 Vulva, Penis, Scrotum  
 Breast  
 Prostate  
 Testis  
 Lymphoma

**Factor**

Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes of Head and Neck  
 Clinical Status of Lymph Node Mets  
 Number of Positive Ipsilateral Axillary Lymph Nodes  
 CS Extension - Pathologic Extension  
 LDH (Lactate Dehydrogenase)  
 International Prognostic Index (IPI) Score

\* Head and neck includes the following schemas: upper lip; lower lip; other lip; base of tongue; anterior tongue; upper gum; lower gum and retromolar trigone; other gum; floor of mouth; hard palate; soft palate/uvula; other mouth; buccal mucosa; parotid gland; submandibular gland; other salivary glands; oropharynx; anterior surface of epiglottis; nasopharynx; pyriform sinus/ hypopharynx; other pharynx; nasal cavity; middle ear; maxillary sinus; ethmoid sinus; other sinus; glottic larynx; supraglottic larynx; subglottic larynx; other larynx

3. Code 000 Not done is used when there is a statement in the record that a test was not performed.
  - a. If there is no report of a lab test in the health record, code as 999 Unknown; Not documented in patient record.
  - b. For the lymphomas, if the IPI score is not stated in the record, code as 999 Unknown; Not documented in patient record. It is not necessary to calculate the IPI score from other information in the record.

**FOR HEAD AND NECK SITES ONLY:**

3. Use code 9 only when it is unknown if lymph nodes are involved. Within the Site-Specific Factors, do not code 9 in some positions and 0 or 1 in other positions. If specific information is available about the positive or negative status of some but not all nodes in any one level or group, assume that the rest of the nodes in the same Site-Specific Factor are negative and code accordingly.
4. When the only information available is “Regional nodes, NOS” or “Cervical nodes, NOS” or “Internal jugular lymph nodes, NOS” or “Lymph nodes, NOS,” code 0 in all digits of Site-Specific Factors 3-6.
5. See “Coding Regional Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck Sites” under CS Lymph Nodes for further information about the regional nodes of the head and neck, including definitions of the levels.

## CS SITE-SPECIFIC FACTOR 4

Item Length: 3  
 NAACCR Item #: 2910  
 NAACCR Name: CS Site-Specific Factor 4

**Description**

Identifies additional information needed to generate stage, or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Code	Description
000	None
	<b>SITE/HISTOLOGY-SPECIFIC CODES</b>
999	Unknown; [site-specific title] cannot be assessed; Not documented in patient record

**For schemas that do not use this site-specific factor:**

Code	Description
888	Not applicable for this site

**Instructions for Coding**

1. If there is no site/histology-specific factor for a schema, code 888.
2. The following primary sites use Site Specific Factor 4 to code information. See the site-specific schemas for acceptable codes and their definitions.

**Site/Histology**

Head and Neck\*  
 Malignant Melanoma of Skin,  
 Vulva, Penis, Scrotum  
 Breast  
 Prostate  
 Testis

**Factor**

Levels IV-V, Lymph Nodes of Head and Neck  
 Lactate Dehydrogenase (LDH)  
 Immunohistochemistry (IHC) of Regional Lymph Nodes  
 Prostate Apex Involvement (effective as of version 1.02.00)  
 [Prostatic Acid Phosphatase (PAP)–OBSOLETE as of version 1.02.00]  
 Radical Orchiectomy Performed

\* Head and neck includes the following schemas: upper lip; lower lip; other lip; base of tongue; anterior tongue; upper gum; lower gum and retromolar trigone; other gum; floor of mouth; hard palate; soft palate/uvula; other mouth; buccal mucosa; parotid gland; submandibular gland; other salivary glands; oropharynx; anterior surface of epiglottis; nasopharynx; pyriform sinus/ hypopharynx; other pharynx; nasal cavity; middle ear; maxillary sinus; ethmoid sinus; other sinus; glottic larynx; supraglottic larynx; subglottic larynx; other larynx



3. Code 000 Not done is used when there is a statement in the record that a test was not performed.
  - a. If there is no report of a lab test in the health record, code as 999 Unknown; Not documented in patient record.

**FOR HEAD AND NECK SITES ONLY:**

4. Use code 9 only when it is unknown if lymph nodes are involved. Within the Site-Specific Factors, do not code 9 in some positions and 0 or 1 in other positions. If specific information is available about the positive or negative status of some but not all nodes in any one level or group, assume that the rest of the nodes in the same Site-Specific Factor are negative and code accordingly.
5. When the only information available is “Regional nodes, NOS” or “Cervical nodes, NOS” or “Internal jugular lymph nodes, NOS” or “Lymph nodes, NOS,” code 0 in all digits of Site-Specific Factors 3-6.
6. See “Coding Regional Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck Sites” under CS Lymph Nodes for further information about the regional nodes of the head and neck, including definitions of the levels.

## CS SITE-SPECIFIC FACTOR 5

Item Length: 3  
NAACCR Item #: 2920  
NAACCR Name: CS Site-Specific Factor 5

**Description**

Identifies additional information needed to generate stage, or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Code	Description
000	None
	<b>SITE/HISTOLOGY-SPECIFIC CODES</b>
999	Unknown; [site-specific title] cannot be assessed; Not documented in patient record

For schemas that do not use this site-specific factor:

Code	Description
888	Not applicable for this site

**Instructions for Coding**

- If there is no site/histology-specific factor for a schema, code 888.
- The following primary sites use Site Specific Factor 5 to code information. See the site-specific schemas for acceptable codes and their definitions.

**Site/Histology**

Head and Neck\*  
Breast  
Prostate  
Testis

**Factor**

Levels VI-VIII, Lymph Nodes of Head and Neck  
Molecular Studies of Regional Lymph Nodes  
Gleason's Primary and Secondary Patterns  
Size of Metastasis in Lymph Nodes

\* Head and neck includes the following schemas: upper lip; lower lip; other lip; base of tongue; anterior tongue; upper gum; lower gum and retromolar trigone; other gum; floor of mouth; hard palate; soft palate/uvula; other mouth; buccal mucosa; parotid gland; submandibular gland; other salivary glands; oropharynx; anterior surface of epiglottis; nasopharynx; pyriform sinus/hypopharynx; other pharynx; nasal cavity; middle ear; maxillary sinus; ethmoid sinus; other sinus; glottic larynx; supraglottic larynx; subglottic larynx; other larynx

- Code 000 Not done is used when there is a statement in the record that a test was not performed.
  - If there is no report of a lab test in the health record, code as 999 Unknown; Not documented in patient record.

**FOR HEAD AND NECK SITES ONLY:**

7. Use code 9 only when it is unknown if lymph nodes are involved. Within the Site-Specific Factors, do not code 9 in some positions and 0 or 1 in other positions. If specific information is available about the positive or negative status of some but not all nodes in any one level or group, assume that the rest of the nodes in the same Site-Specific Factor are negative and code accordingly.
8. When the only information available is “Regional nodes, NOS” or “Cervical nodes, NOS” or “Internal jugular lymph nodes, NOS” or “Lymph nodes, NOS,” code 0 in all digits of Site-Specific Factors 3-6.
9. See “Coding Regional Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck Sites” under CS Lymph Nodes for further information about the regional nodes of the head and neck, including definitions of the levels.

## CS SITE-SPECIFIC FACTOR 6

Item Length: 3  
 NAACCR Item #: 2930  
 NAACCR Name: CS Site-Specific Factor 6

**Description**

Identifies additional information needed to generate stage, or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Code	Description
000	None
	<b>SITE/HISTOLOGY-SPECIFIC CODES</b>
999	Unknown; [site-specific title] cannot be assessed; Not documented in patient record

**For schemas that do not use this site-specific factor:**

Code	Description
888	Not applicable for this site

**Instructions for Coding**

- If there is no site/histology-specific factor for a schema, code 888.
- The following primary sites use Site Specific Factor 6 to code information. See the site-specific schemas for acceptable codes and their definitions.

**Site/Histology**

Head and Neck\*

Breast

Prostate

**Factor**

Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Size of Tumor--Invasive Component

Gleason's Score

\* Head and neck includes the following schemas: upper lip; lower lip; other lip; base of tongue; anterior tongue; upper gum; lower gum and retromolar trigone; other gum; floor of mouth; hard palate; soft palate/uvula; other mouth; buccal mucosa; parotid gland; submandibular gland; other salivary glands; oropharynx; anterior surface of epiglottis; nasopharynx; pyriform sinus/ hypopharynx; other pharynx; nasal cavity; middle ear; maxillary sinus; ethmoid sinus; other sinus; glottic larynx; supraglottic larynx; subglottic larynx; other larynx

- Code 000 Not done is used when there is a statement in the record that a test was not performed.
  - If there is no report of a lab test in the health record, code as 999 Unknown; Not documented in patient record.

**FOR HEAD AND NECK SITES ONLY:**

4. Use code 9 only when it is unknown if lymph nodes are involved. Within the Site-Specific Factors, do not code 9 in some positions and 0 or 1 in other positions. If specific information is available about the positive or negative status of some but not all nodes in any one level or group, assume that the rest of the nodes in the same Site-Specific Factor are negative and code accordingly.
5. When the only information available is “Regional nodes, NOS” or “Cervical nodes, NOS” or “Internal jugular lymph nodes, NOS” or “Lymph nodes, NOS,” code 0 in all digits of Site-Specific Factors 3-6.
6. See “Coding Regional Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck Sites” under CS Lymph Nodes for further information about the regional nodes of the head and neck, including definitions of the levels.

**CS DERIVED DATA ITEMS**

The data items listed below are required by SEER. These data items are generated by the CS computer algorithm using values entered in other CS data items. Do not code these data items manually.

<b>NAACCR 11 Data Item Name</b>	<b>Item Number</b>
Derived AJCC T	2940
Derived AJCC N	2960
Derived AJCC M	2980
Derived AJCC Stage Group	3000
Derived SS1977	3010
Derived SS2000	3020
Derived AJCC--Flag	3030
Derived SS1977--Flag	3040
Derived SS2000-Flag	3050

**CS VERSION FIRST**

**Item Length: 6**  
**NAACCR Item #: 2935**  
**NAACCR Name: CS Version 1<sup>st</sup>**

This computer assigned number indicates the version of CS used to initially code the CS data items. When the CS algorithm is run and the output values stored at the time of initial abstracting, the program automatically stores the value into the data item CS Version First.

The digits are stored as follows:

- The first two digits represent the major version number
- The third and fourth digits represent minor version changes
- The last two digits represent even less significant changes such as corrections of typographical errors that do not effect coding

*Note:* This field would be updated if the data item codes are changed. For example, if the CS data items for a specific site were to be systematically recoded, the value in CS Version First would change to reflect the version of CS used to recode the data items.

**CS VERSION LATEST**

**Item Length: 6**  
**NAACCR Item #: 2936**  
**NAACCR Name: CS Version Latest**

This computer assigned number indicates the version of CS used most recently to derive the CS output fields. This data item is updated each time the CS output fields are derived. Do not update this number manually.

This item should be blank when:

- The CS derived items contain stored values
- The CS derived items are empty
- The CS algorithm has not been applied

The digits are stored as follows:

- The first two digits represent the major version number
- The third and fourth digits represent minor version changes
- The last two digits represent even less significant changes such as corrections of typographical errors that do not affect coding



**SEER SUMMARY STAGE 1977**

**Item Length: 1**

**NAACCR Item #: 760**

**NAACCR Name: SEER SUMMARY STAGE 1977**

This data item is required for SEER registries who elect to have SEER submit their data to NAACCR, only. Tumors diagnosed before January 1, 2001, should be assigned a summary stage according to *SEER Summary Staging Guide*.

SEER Summary Stage 1977 is limited to information available within 2 months of the date of diagnosis.

**Note:** See also the data item Derived SS21977 [NAACCR Item #3010] for the value of SEER Summary Stage 1977 as generated by the Collaborative Staging algorithm.

Data may be submitted using either manually entered SEER Summary Stage 1977 code or Collaborative Stage generated code.

**Codes**

- 0 In situ
- 1 Localized
- 2 Regional, direct extension only
- 3 Regional, regional lymph nodes only
- 4 Regional, direct extension and regional lymph nodes
- 5 Regional, NOS
- 7 Distant
- 8 Not applicable
- 9 Unstaged

**SEER SUMMARY STAGE 2000**

**Item Length: 1**

**NAACCR Item #: 759**

**NAACCR Name: SEER SUMMARY STAGE 2000**

This data item is required for SEER registries who elect to have SEER submit their data to NAACCR, only. Tumors diagnosed January 1, 2001 or after, should be assigned a summary stage according to *SEER Summary Staging Manual 2000*.

Summary stage should include all information available through completion of surgery(ies) in the first course of treatment or within 4 months of diagnosis in the absence of disease progression, whichever is longer.

**Note:** See also the data item Derived SS2000 [NAACCR Item #3020] for the value of SEER Summary Stage 2000 as generated by the Collaborative Staging algorithm.

Data may be submitted using either manually entered SEER Summary Stage 2000 code or Collaborative Stage generated code.

**Codes**

- 0 In situ
- 1 Localized
- 2 Regional, direct extension only
- 3 Regional, direct extension and regional lymph nodes
- 4 Regional, regional lymph nodes only
- 5 Regional, NOS
- 7 Distant
- 8 Not applicable
- 9 Unstaged

SECTION VI  
FIRST COURSE OF THERAPY

**All Diseases (including benign and borderline malignancy intracranial & CNS tumors) Except Leukemia and Hematopoietic Diseases**

**Definitions**

**Cancer tissue:** Proliferating malignant cells; an area of active production of malignant cells. Cancer tissue includes primary tumor and metastatic sites where cancer tissue grows. Cells in fluid such as pleural fluid or ascitic fluid are not “cancer tissue” because the cells do not grow and proliferate in the fluid.

**Disease recurrence:** The patient must have had a disease-free interval or remission (the cancer was not clinically evident). Following a disease-free interval, there is documentation that the initial/original tumor gave rise to the later tumor.

**First course of therapy:** All of the treatments administered to the patient after the original diagnosis of cancer in an attempt to destroy or modify the cancer tissue. See below for detailed information on timing and treatment plan documentation requirements.

**Palliative treatment:** The World Health Organization describes palliative care as treatment that improves the quality of life by preventing or relieving suffering. Palliative therapy is also part of the first course of therapy when the treatment destroys or modifies cancer tissue. Palliative therapy may also be part of the first course of therapy if it destroys proliferating cancer tissue.

**Example:** The patient was diagnosed with stage IV cancer of the prostate with painful boney metastases. The patient starts radiation treatment intended to shrink the tumor in the bone and relieve the intense pain. The radiation treatments are palliative because they relieve the bone pain; the radiation is also first course of therapy because it destroys proliferating cancer tissue.

**Surgical Procedure:** Any surgical procedure coded in the fields Surgery of Primary Site, Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery, or Surgery of Other Regional or Distant Sites.

**Treatment:** Procedures that destroy or modify primary (primary site) or secondary (metastatic) cancer tissue.

**Treatment failure:** The treatment modalities did not destroy or modify the cancer cells. The tumor either became larger (disease progression) or stayed the same size after treatment.

**Watchful waiting:** A treatment option for patients with slow, indolent diseases, such as prostate cancer. The physician closely monitors the patient and delays treatment until the patient becomes symptomatic or there are other signs of disease progression, such as rising PSA.

## Treatment Timing

Use the following instructions in hierarchical order.

1. Use the **documented** first course of therapy from the medical record. First course of therapy ends when the treatment plan is **completed**. (No matter how long it takes to complete the plan).

*Example 1:* First course of treatment for childhood leukemia typically spans two years from induction, consolidation, to maintenance.

*Example 2:* The first course of therapy for a breast cancer patient is surgery, chemotherapy, and radiation. The patient completes surgery and chemotherapy. Bone metastases are diagnosed before the radiation was started. The physician says that the patient will start the radiation treatment as planned. Code the radiation as first course of therapy since it was given in agreement with the treatment plan and the treatment plan was not changed as a result of disease progression.

1. First course of therapy ends when there is documentation of disease progression, recurrence or treatment failure.

*Example 1:* The documented treatment plan for sarcoma is chemotherapy, surgery, then radiation or chemotherapy depending upon the pathology from surgery. Scans show the tumor is not regressing after chemotherapy. Plans for surgery are cancelled and a different type of chemotherapy is started. Code only the first chemotherapy as first course. Do not code the second chemotherapy as first course because it is administered after documented treatment failure.

*Example 2:* The documented treatment plan for a patient with locally advanced breast cancer includes mastectomy, chemotherapy, radiation to the chest wall and axilla, and hormone therapy. The patient has the mastectomy and completes chemotherapy. During the course of radiation therapy, the liver enzymes are rising. Workup proves liver metastases. The physician stops the radiation and does not continue with hormone therapy (the treatment plan is altered). The patient is placed on a clinical trial to receive Herceptin for metastatic breast cancer. Code the mastectomy, chemotherapy, and radiation as first course of treatment. Do not code the Herceptin as first course of therapy because it is administered after documented disease progression.

2. When there is **no documentation** of a treatment plan, a progression, recurrence or a treatment failure, first course of therapy ends one year after the date of diagnosis. Any treatment given after one year is second course of therapy in the absence of a documented treatment plan or a standard of treatment.

## Coding Instructions

1. When physician decides to do watchful waiting for a patient who has prostate cancer, the first course of therapy is no treatment. Code all of the treatment fields to 00, not done. When the disease progresses or the patient becomes symptomatic; any prescribed treatment is second course.
2. When the patient refuses treatment the first course of therapy is no treatment. Code the treatment fields to refused. If the patient later changes his/her mind and decides to have the prescribed treatment code:
  - a. Code the treatment as first course of therapy if it has been less than one year since the cancer was diagnosed and there has been no documented disease progression.
  - b. Code the treatment as second course of therapy if it has been more than one year since the original cancer was diagnosed or if there has been documented disease progression.

3. Code all treatment that was started and administered.

**Example:** The patient completed only the first dose of a planned 30 day chemotherapy regimen. Code chemotherapy as administered.

4. If a patient has multiple primaries and the treatment given for one primary also affects/treats the other primary, code the treatment for both primary sites.

**Example 1:** The patient had prostate and bladder cancer. The bladder cancer was treated with a TURB. The prostate cancer was treated with radiation to the prostate and pelvis. The pelvic radiation includes the regional lymph nodes for the bladder. Code the radiation as treatment for both the bladder and prostate cases.

**Example 2:** The patient had a hysterectomy for ovarian cancer. The pathology report reveals a previously unsuspected microinvasive cancer of the cervix. Code the hysterectomy as surgical treatment for both the ovarian and cervix primaries.

5. If a patient has multiple primaries and the treatment given affects only one of the primaries, code the treatments only for the site that is affected.

**Example:** The patient has colon and tonsil primaries. The colon cancer is treated with a hemicolectomy and the tonsil primary is treated with radiation to the tonsil and regional nodes. Do not code the radiation for the colon. Do not code the hemicolectomy for the tonsil.

6. If a patient is diagnosed with an unknown primary, code the treatment given as first course even if the correct primary is identified later.

**Example:** The patient is diagnosed with metastatic carcinoma, unknown primary site. After a full course of chemotherapy, the primary site is identified as prostate. Hormonal treatment is started. Code the chemotherapy as first course of treatment. The hormone therapy is second course.

## First Course for Leukemia and Hematopoietic Diseases (diagnosed 1/2001 and after)

### Leukemia

Leukemia is grouped or typed by how quickly the disease develops and gets worse. **Chronic** leukemia gets worse **slowly**. **Acute** leukemia gets worse **quickly**.

Leukemias are also grouped by the **type** of **white blood cell** that is affected. The groupings are: **lymphoid** leukemia and **myeloid** leukemia.

### Definitions

**Consolidation:** Repetitive cycles of chemotherapy given immediately after the remission.

**Induction:** Initial intensive course of chemotherapy.

**Maintenance:** Chemotherapy given for a period of months or years to maintain remission.

**Remission:** The bone marrow is normocellular with less than 5% blasts, there are no signs or symptoms of the disease, no signs or symptoms of central nervous system leukemia or other extramedullary infiltration, and all of the following laboratory values are within normal limits: white blood cell count and differential, hematocrit/hemoglobin level, and platelet count.

**Treatment** for leukemia is divided into **three phases**:

1. Remission induction (chemotherapy and/or biologic response modifiers)
2. CNS prophylaxis or consolidation (irradiation to brain, chemotherapy)
3. Remission continuation or maintenance (chemotherapy or bone marrow transplants).

### Coding First Course of Therapy for Leukemia and Hematopoietic Diseases:

1. If a patient **has** a partial or complete **remission** during the first course of therapy:
  - a. Code all therapy that is “remission-inducing” as first course.
  - b. Code all therapy that is “consolidation” as first course.
  - c. Code all therapy that is “remission-maintaining” as first course.

*Note:* Do not record treatment given after the patient relapses (is no longer in remission).

2. Some patients do not have a remission. A change in the treatment plan indicates a failure to induce remission. If the patient does not have a remission:
  - a. Record the treatment given in an attempt to induce a remission.
  - b. Do not record treatment administered after the change in treatment plan.

## Other Hematopoietic

Record all treatments as described above. The following treatments are coded as “other” in Other Treatment even though they do not “modify, control, remove, or destroy proliferating cancer tissue.” Follow the guidelines in the Abstracting and Coding Guide for the Hematopoietic Diseases to identify treatments. Some examples of “other” treatment include:

**Example 1: Phlebotomy** may be called blood removal, blood letting, or venisection.

**Example 2: Transfusions** may include whole blood, RBCs, platelets, plateletpheresis, fresh frozen plasma (FFP), plasmapheresis, and cryoprecipitate.

**Example 3: Aspirin** (also known as ASA, acetylsalicylic acid, or by a brand name) is used as a treatment for essential thrombocythemia.

- a. Only record aspirin therapy if it is given to thin the blood for symptomatic control of thrombocythemia. Use the following guidelines to determine whether aspirin is administered for thinning of blood for thrombocythemia rather than for pain control or cardiovascular protection:
  - i. Aspirin treatment for essential thrombocythemia is low dose, approximately 70-100 mg/day
  - ii. The dosage for pain control is approximately 325-1000 mg every 3-4 hours.
  - iii. Cardiovascular protection starts at about 160 mg/day.

**DATE THERAPY INITIATED**

**Item Length: 8**  
**NAACCR Item #: 1260**  
**NAACCR Name: Date of initial RX--SEER**

Record the start date of the first course of therapy. This may be the start date of any type of treatment for this tumor; surgery, chemotherapy, radiation therapy, or other types of therapy. Treatment may be given in a hospital or non-hospital setting. Date fields are recorded in the month, day, century, year format (MMDDCCYY) with 99 for unknown day or month and 9999 for unknown year.

Most SEER registries collect the month, day, and year of therapy. The third and fourth digits (day) are recoded to 99 when the data are transmitted to SEER.

**Codes for Month**

01	January
02	February
03	March
04	April
05	May
06	June
07	July
08	August
09	September
10	October
11	November
12	December
99	Unknown month

**Codes for Day**

01	
02	
03	
..	
..	
31	
99	Unknown day

**Codes for Year**

Code the four-digit year of therapy initiation  
Record 9999 for unknown year

**Special Codes**

00000000	No date, no first course of treatment provided
99999999	Unknown date



## Definitions

**Cancer-directed therapy:** Treatment administered to the patient in an attempt to destroy or modify cancer tissue.

*Note:* Surgical procedures coded in the data items Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery and Surgical Procedure of Other Site are not necessarily cancer-directed therapy.

## Coding Instructions

1. Code **0000000** if no therapy was given or for autopsy only cases
2. Code the **start date** of the first therapy. The first therapy may be coded in the following data items:
  - Surgery of Primary Site
  - Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery
  - Surgical Procedure of Other Sites
  - Radiation Therapy
  - Chemotherapy
  - Hormone Therapy
  - Immunotherapy
  - Hematologic Transplant and Endocrine Procedures
  - Other Therapy

3. Code the date of **excisional biopsy** as the date therapy initiated if it is the first treatment. Code the date of a biopsy documented as incisional if further surgery reveals no residual or only microscopic residual.

*Example:* Breast core needle biopsy with diagnosis of infiltrating duct carcinoma; subsequent re-excision with no residual tumor noted. Code the date of the needle biopsy as the excisional biopsy date.

4. Code the **date** unproven therapy was initiated as the date therapy initiated.
5. If the exact date of the first treatment is **unknown**, code the date of admission to the hospital for inpatient or outpatient treatment.
6. Code **9999999**
  - a. It is known the patient had first course therapy, but it is impossible to estimate the date
  - b. Death certificate only cases

## SURGERY OF PRIMARY SITE

Item Length: 2  
NAACCR Item #: 1290  
NAACCR Name: RX Summ--Surg Prim Site

Surgery of Primary Site describes a surgical procedure that removes and/or destroys tissue of the primary site performed as part of the initial diagnostic and staging work-up or first course of therapy. Site-specific surgery codes are included under Appendix C of this manual.

**General Coding Structure** (See Appendix C for site-specific codes)

- 00 None; no surgical procedure of primary site; diagnosed at autopsy only
- 10-19 Site-specific codes. Tumor destruction; no pathologic specimen or unknown whether there is a pathologic specimen
- 20-80 Site-specific codes. Resection; pathologic specimen
- 90 Surgery, NOS. A surgical procedure to the primary site was done, but no information on the type of surgical procedure is provided.
- 98 Special codes for hematopoietic, reticuloendothelial, immunoproliferative, myeloproliferative diseases; ill-defined sites; and unknown primaries (See site-specific codes for the sites and histologies), except death certificate only
- 99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate only

**Coding Instructions**

1. Code 00 if **no surgery** is performed on the primary site or if case was diagnosed at **autopsy, and would not be otherwise coded to 98**.
2. Use the site-specific coding scheme corresponding to the coded primary site.
3. Code the most **invasive, extensive, or definitive** surgery if the patient has multiple surgical procedures of the primary site even if there is no tumor found in the pathologic specimen. The codes in the range of 00-80 are **listed** in hierarchical but not necessarily numerical order. When more than one surgical procedure is performed, code the procedure listed furthest down the list within the codes 10-80.

**Example:** Patient has a needle biopsy of prostate that is positive for adenocarcinoma. The patient chooses to have a radical prostatectomy. The pathologic examination of the prostatectomy specimen shows no residual tumor. Code the radical prostatectomy.

4. Code an **excisional biopsy**, even when documented as **incisional**, when:
  - a. All disease is removed (**margins free**) OR
  - b. All gross disease is removed and there is only microscopic residual at the margin

**Note:** Do not code an excisional biopsy when there is macroscopic residual disease.

5. Code total **removal of the primary site** when a previous procedure resected a portion of the site and the current surgery removed the rest of the organ. The previous procedure may have been cancer directed or non-cancer directed surgery.

6. Code the removal of regional or distant **tissue/organs** when they are resected in continuity with the primary site (**en bloc**). Specimens from an en bloc resection may be submitted to pathology separately.

*Example:* Code an en bloc removal when the patient has a hysterectomy and an omentectomy.

7. Code surgery for extra-lymphatic lymphoma using the site-specific surgery coding scheme (not lymph node scheme) for the primary site.
8. Code **80** or **90** only when there is no specific information.
9. Code **98** for the following sites unless the case is death certificate only:
  - a. Hematopoietic, reticuloendothelial, immunoproliferative, or myeloproliferative disease
    - i. Primary sites: C420, C421, C423, or C424 (all histologies)
    - ii. Histologies: 9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989 (all sites)
    - iii. Unknown or ill-defined sites (C760-C768, C809) (all histologies)
10. Assign **code 99** for death certificate only (DCO) cases

## SCOPE OF REGIONAL LYMPH NODE SURGERY

Item Length: 1  
NAACCR Item #: 1292  
NAACCR Name: RX Summ--Scope Reg LN Sur

Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery describes the procedure of removal, biopsy, or aspiration of **regional** lymph nodes performed during the initial work-up or first course of therapy.

### Codes

- 0 No regional lymph nodes removed or aspirated; diagnosed at autopsy.
- 1 Biopsy or aspiration of regional lymph node, NOS
- 2 Sentinel lymph node biopsy [only]
- 3 Number of regional lymph nodes removed unknown, not stated; regional lymph nodes removed, NOS
- 4 1 to 3 regional lymph nodes removed
- 5 4 or more regional lymph nodes removed
- 6 Sentinel node biopsy and code 3, 4, or 5 at same time or timing not noted
- 7 Sentinel node biopsy and code 3, 4, or 5 at different times
- 9 Unknown or not applicable; death certificate only

### Coding Instructions

1. Code 0 when regional lymph node removal procedure was not performed.
2. Code regional lymph node procedures in this data item. Record distant lymph node removal in Surgical Procedure of Other Site.
3. Codes 1-7 are **hierarchical**. Code the procedure that is numerically higher.
4. The regional lymph node surgical procedure(s) may be done to **diagnose** cancer, **stage** the disease, or as a part of the initial **treatment**. Record all surgical procedures that remove, biopsy, or aspirate regional lymph node(s) whether or not there were any surgical procedures of the primary site.

**Example:** Patient has a sentinel node biopsy of a single lymph node. Assign code 2 (Sentinel lymph node biopsy [only]).

5. The Scope of Regional Lymph Node field is **cumulative**; add the number of all of the lymph nodes removed during each surgical procedure performed as part of the first course of treatment.

**Example:** Patient has a positive cervical node biopsy. The pathology report from a subsequent node dissection identifies three cervical nodes. Assign code 5 (4 or more regional lymph nodes removed).

6. If the operative report lists a lymph node dissection, but **no nodes were found by the pathologist**, code the Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery to 0 (No lymph nodes removed).
7. If the patient has **two primaries with common regional lymph nodes**, code the removal of regional nodes for both primaries.

**Example:** Patient has a cystoprostatectomy and pelvic lymph node dissection for bladder cancer. Pathology identifies prostate cancer as well as the bladder cancer and 4/21 nodes positive for metastatic adenocarcinoma. Code Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery to 5 (4 or more regional lymph nodes removed) for both primaries.

8. Assign **code 9** for
  - a. Primary sites
    - i. Brain (C700-C709) OR
    - ii. Spinal cord (C710-C719) OR
    - iii. Cranial nerves and other parts of the central nervous system (C720-C729)
  - b. Lymphoma with primary site in lymph nodes (C770-C779) AND histology
    - i. 9590-9596 OR
    - ii. 9650-9719 OR
    - iii. 9727-9729
  - c. Hematopoietic, reticuloendothelial, immunoproliferative, or myeloproliferative disease
    - i. Primary sites: C420, C421, C423, or C424 (all histologies)
    - ii. Histologies: 9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989 (all sites)
    - iii. Unknown or ill-defined sites (C760-C768, C809) (all histologies)

**SURGICAL PROCEDURE OF OTHER SITE**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 1294**  
**NAACCR Name: Rx Summ--Surg Oth Reg/Dis**

Surgical Procedure of Other Site describes the surgical removal of distant lymph node(s) or other tissue(s) or organ(s) beyond the primary site.

**Codes**

- 0 None; diagnosed at autopsy
- 1 Nonprimary surgical procedure performed
- 2 Nonprimary surgical procedure to other regional sites
- 3 Non-primary surgical procedure to distant lymph node(s)
- 4 Nonprimary surgical procedure to distant site
- 5 Combination of codes 2, 3, or 4
- 9 Unknown; death certificate only

**Coding Instructions**

1. Code 0 when no surgical procedures were performed that removed distant lymph node(s) or other tissue(s) or organ(s) beyond the primary site.
2. The codes are **hierarchical**. Code the procedure that is numerically higher.
3. Codes 1-5 have priority over codes 0 and 9
4. Do not code tissue or organs such as an appendix that were removed **incidentally**, and the organ was not involved with cancer.

**Note:** Incidental removal of organs means that tissue was removed for reasons other than removing cancer or preventing the spread of cancer. Examples of incidental removal of organ(s) would be removal of appendix, gallbladder, etc. during abdominal surgery.

**REASON FOR NO SURGERY OF PRIMARY SITE**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 1340**  
**NAACCR Name: Reason for No Surgery**

Records the reason that surgery was not performed on the primary site.

**Codes**

- 0 Surgery of the primary site was performed
- 1 Surgery of the primary site was not performed because it was not part of the planned first-course treatment
- 2 Surgery of the primary site was not recommended/performed because it was contraindicated due to patient risk factors (comorbid conditions, advanced age, etc.)
- 5 Surgery of the primary site was not performed because the patient died prior to planned or recommended surgery
- 6 Surgery of the primary site was not performed; it was recommended by the patient's physician, but was not performed as part of the first course of therapy. No reason was noted in the patient's record.
- 7 Surgery of the primary site was not performed; it was recommended by the patient's physician, but was refused by the patient, the patient's family member, or the patient's guardian. The refusal was noted in the patient record.
- 8 Surgery of the primary site was recommended, but it is unknown if it was performed. Further follow up is recommended.
- 9 It is unknown if surgery of the primary site was recommended or performed; death certificate only cases and autopsy only cases.

**Coding Instructions**

- 1. Assign **code 0** when Surgery of Primary Site is coded in the range of 10-90 (the patient did have surgery of primary site)
- 2. Assign a code in the **range of 1-8** if Surgery of Primary Site is coded 00 or 98.
- 3. Assign **code 1** when
  - a. There is no information in the patient's medical record about surgery AND
    - i. It is known that surgery is not usually performed for this type and/or stage of cancer OR
    - ii. There is no reason to suspect that the patient would have had surgery of primary site.
  - b. The treatment plan offered multiple treatment options and the patient selected treatment that did not include surgery of the primary site.
  - c. Patient elects to pursue no treatment following the discussion of surgery. Discussion does not equal a recommendation.
  - d. Only information available is that the patient was referred to a surgeon. Referral does not equal a recommendation.
  - e. Watchful waiting (prostate)

4. Assign **code 6** when
  - a. It is known that surgery was recommended AND
  - b. It is known that surgery was not performed AND
  - c. There is no documentation explaining why surgery was not done.
5. Assign **code 7** (refused) if the patient refused recommended surgery, or made a blanket statement that he/she refused all treatment.
6. Assign **code 8** (unknown) if the treatment plan offered surgery, but it is unknown if the patient actually had the surgery.
7. Assign **code 9**
  - a. When there is no documentation that surgery was recommended or performed
  - b. Death certificate only.
  - c. Autopsy only (Diagnosis 1/1/2003 and later)



## RADIATION

Item Length: 1  
NAACCR Item #: 1360  
NAACCR Name: RX Summ--Radiation

Record the method of administration of radiation administered as a part of the first course of treatment. Record all radiation that is given, even if it is palliative.

The Commission on Cancer (COC) does not require the collection of the radiation summary data field effective 1/1/2002. If this data item is not reported by a COC hospital, SEER central registries can generate the code for this field by combining information from fields required by COC. Tables for deriving the radiation summary are included in this section.

### Codes

- 0 None; diagnosed at autopsy
- 1 Beam radiation
- 2 Radioactive implants
- 3 Radioisotopes
- 4 Combination of 1 with 2 or 3
- 5 Radiation, NOS – method or source not specified
- 7 Patient or patient's guardian refused radiation therapy
- 8 Radiation recommended, unknown if administered
- 9 Unknown if radiation administered

### Coding Instructions

1. Assign **code 0**
  - a. There is no information in the patient's medical record about radiation AND
    - i. It is known that radiation is not usually performed for this type and/or stage of cancer  
OR
    - ii. There is no reason to suspect that the patient would have had radiation.
  - b. If the treatment plan offered multiple treatment options and the patient selected treatment that did not include radiation.
  - c. Patient elects to pursue no treatment following the discussion of radiation treatment. Discussion does not equal a recommendation.
  - d. Only information available is that the patient was referred to a radiation oncologist. Referral does not equal a recommendation.
  - e. Watchful waiting (prostate)
  - f. Patient diagnosed at autopsy
2. Assign **code 1** for beam radiation directed to cancer tissue. The source of the beam radiation is not used for coding purposes. Sources may include, but are not limited to: X-ray, Cobalt, linear accelerator, neutron beam, betatron, spray radiation, stereotactic radiosurgery such as gamma knife and proton beam.

3. Assign **code 2** when the radiation is delivered by interstitial implant, molds, seeds, needles or intracavitary applicators. The radioactive material used in implants includes, but is not limited to: cesium, radium, radon, radioactive gold, and iodine.
4. Assign **code 3** when radioactive isotopes are given orally, intracavitary or by intravenous injection. Radioactive isotopes include but are not limited to: I-131 or P-32.
5. Assign **code 4** when the patient has beam radiation and either radioactive implants or radioisotopes.
6. For cases diagnosed prior to 1/1/1998, radiation to the brain and/or central nervous system for lung and leukemia cases was coded in the field Radiation to the Brain and/or Central Nervous System.
7. Assign **code 9**
  - a. When there is no documentation that radiation was recommended or performed.
  - b. Death certificate only.

Translation of Regional Treatment Modality and/or Boost Treatment Modality Field to Radiation

Radiation	Code	Regional Treatment Modality and/or Boost Treatment	
0 None	00	No radiation treatment	
1 Beam radiation	20	External beam, NOS	
	21	Orthovoltage	
	22	Cobalt-60, Cesium-137	
	23	Photons (2-5 MV)	
	24	Photons (6-10 MV)	
	25	Photons (11-19 MV)	
	26	Photons (>19 MV)	
	27	Photons (mixed energies)	
	28	Electrons	
	29	Photons and electrons mixed	
	30	Neutrons, with or without photons/electrons	
	31	IMRT	
	32	Conformal or 3-D therapy	
	40	Protons	
	41	Stereotactic radiosurgery, NOS	
	42	Linac radiosurgery	
	43	Gamma Knife	
	2 Radioactive implants	50	Brachytherapy, NOS
		51	Brachytherapy, intracavitary, LDR
52		Brachytherapy, intracavitary, HDR	
53		Brachytherapy, interstitial, LDR	
54		Brachytherapy, interstitial, HDR	
55		Radium	
3 Radioisotopes	60	Radioisotopes, NOS	
	61	Strontium-89	
	62	Strontium-90	
4 Combination of 1 with 2 or 3	80	Combination modality, specified	
	85	Combination modality, NOS	
5 Radiation therapy, NOS, method or source unspecified	98	Other, NOS	
9 Unknown	99	Unknown	

If a code for Radiation is not received from hospital registrars, the code can be derived from the following sources. The code for Radiation is derived from Rad-Boost RX Modality, Rad-Regional TX Modality, and/or Reason For No Radiation.

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

---

<b>Rad—Boost RX Modality</b>	<b>Rad—Regional TX Modality</b>	<b>RX Summ--Radiation</b>
00	00, 99	0*
00	20-43	1
00	50-55	2
00	60-62	3
00	80-85	4
00	98	5
20-43	00, 20-43, 98, 99	1
20-43	50-55, 60-62, 80-85	4
50-55	00, 50-55, 98, 99	2
50-55	20-43, 80-85	4
50-55	60-62	3
60-62	00, 50-55, 60-62, 98, 99	3
60-62	20-43, 80-85	4
80-85	00-99	4
98	00, 98, 99	5
98, 99	20-43	1
98, 99	50-55	2
98, 99	60-62	3
98, 99	80-85	4
99	00	0*
99	99	9

\* Reason No Radiation is reviewed for asterisked items only. If Reason for No Radiation is 7, Radiation is 7; If Reason for No Radiation is 8, Radiation code is 8.

## RADIATION SEQUENCE WITH SURGERY

Item Length: 1  
NAACCR Item #: 1380  
NAACCR Name: RX Summ--Surg/Rad Seq

This field records the order in which surgery and radiation therapies were administered for those patients who had **both surgery and radiation**. For the purpose of coding Radiation Sequence with Surgery, 'Surgery' is defined as a Surgical Procedure to the Primary Site (codes 10-90) or Scope of Regional Lymph Node **Surgery** (codes 1-7) or Surgical Procedure of Other Site (codes 1-5).

### Codes

- 0 No radiation and/or surgery as defined above
- 2 Radiation before surgery
- 3 Radiation after surgery
- 4 Radiation both before and after surgery
- 5 Intraoperative radiation therapy
- 6 Intraoperative radiation with other radiation given before or after surgery
- 9 Sequence unknown, but both surgery and radiation were given

### Definition

**Surgery:** Surgical Procedure to the Primary Site (codes 10-90) or Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery (codes 1-7) or Surgical Procedure of Other Site (codes 1-5).

### Coding Instructions

Assign code 0 when

- The patient did not have either surgery or radiation.
- The patient had surgery but not radiation.
- The patient had radiation but not surgery

*Note:* For cases diagnosed prior to 1/1/1998, Radiation to the Brain and/or Central Nervous System was counted as radiation when coding this field.

Assign codes 2-9 when first course of therapy consists of both cancer-directed surgery and radiation therapy.

## CHEMOTHERAPY

Item Length: 2  
 NAACCR Item #: 1390  
 NAACCR Name: RX Summ--Chemo

The data item Chemotherapy records the chemotherapy given as a part of the first course of treatment or the reason that chemotherapy was not given. See SEER\*RX for chemotherapy drug codes.

Chemotherapeutic agents are chemicals that affect cancer tissue by means other than hormonal manipulation. The agents inhibit the production of cancer cells by interfering with DNA synthesis and mitosis. They may be divided into three classes with respect to their dependence on the cell cycle.

1. Alkylating agents are **not cell-cycle-specific**. Although they are toxic to all cells, they are especially toxic to proliferating cells.
2. Other drugs are **cell-cycle-specific**. Cells must be proliferating for these drugs to be effective.
3. Cell-cycle-specific drugs may also be **cell-cycle phase-specific**; such drugs are active only in one stage of the cell cycle.

Chemotherapy agents are also grouped by their ingredients and the way they attack the cells. Those groups are:

1. Alkylating
2. Antimetabolites
3. Natural products
4. Other miscellaneous

## Codes

- 00 None, chemotherapy was not part of the planned first course of therapy; diagnosed at autopsy
- 01 Chemotherapy administered as first course therapy, but the type and number of agents is not documented in the patient record.
- 02 Single agent chemotherapy administered as first course therapy.
- 03 Multiagent chemotherapy administered as first course therapy.
- 82 Chemotherapy was not recommended/administered because it was contraindicated due to patient risk factors (comorbid conditions, advanced age, etc.).
- 85 Chemotherapy was not administered because the patient died prior to planned or recommended therapy.
- 86 Chemotherapy was not administered. It was recommended by the patient's physician, but was not administered as part of the first course of therapy. No reason was stated in patient record.
- 87 Chemotherapy was not administered. It was recommended by the patient's physician, but the treatment was refused by the patient, a patient's family member, or the patient's guardian. The refusal was noted in the patient record.
- 88 Chemotherapy was recommended, but it is unknown if it was administered.
- 99 It is unknown whether a chemotherapeutic agent(s) was recommended or administered because it is not stated in the patient record. Death certificate only.

## Definitions

**Chemotherapy recommended:** There was a consult recommending chemotherapy or the attending physician documented that chemotherapy was recommended. A referral to a clinical oncologist does not equal a recommendation.

**Multiple agent chemotherapy:** Two or more chemotherapeutic agents were administered to destroy cancer tissue during the first course of therapy. The chemotherapeutic agents may or may not have been administered with other drugs classified as immunotherapy, hormone therapy, ancillary or other treatment.

**Single agent chemotherapy:** Only one chemotherapeutic agent was administered to destroy cancer tissue during the first course of therapy. The chemotherapeutic agent may or may not have been administered with other drugs classified as immunotherapy, hormone therapy, ancillary, or other treatment.

## Coding Instructions

1. Code the chemotherapeutic agents whose actions are chemotherapeutic only; **do not code** the method of **administration**.
2. When chemotherapeutic agents are used as radiosensitizers or radioprotectants, they are given at a much lower dosage and do not affect the cancer. Radiosensitizers and radioprotectants are classified as ancillary drugs. Do not code as chemotherapy.
3. The physician may change a drug during the first course of therapy because the patient cannot tolerate the original agent. If the chemotherapeutic agent that is substituted belongs to the same group (alkylating, antimetabolites, natural products, or other miscellaneous), this is a continuation of the first course of therapy. If treated with a single agent and this agent is changed to another single agent in the same group code remains 02 single agent.
4. Assign **code 00** when
  - a. There is no information in the patient's medical record about chemotherapy AND
    - i. It is known that chemotherapy is not usually performed for this type and/or stage of cancer OR
    - ii. There is no reason to suspect that the patient would have had chemotherapy.
  - b. If the treatment plan offered multiple treatment options and the patient selected treatment that did not include chemotherapy.
  - c. Patient elects to pursue no treatment following the discussion of chemotherapy Discussion does not equal a recommendation.
  - d. Only information available is that the patient was referred to a clinical oncologist. Referral does not equal a recommendation.
  - e. Watchful waiting (CLL).
  - f. Patient diagnosed at autopsy.

**Example:** Patient is diagnosed with multiple myeloma. There is no mention of treatment or treatment plans in the medical record. Follow-back finds that the patient died three months after diagnosis. There are no additional medical records or other pertinent information available. Assign code 00 since there is no reason to suspect that the patient had been treated.

5. Do not code combination of ancillary drugs administered with single agent chemotherapeutic agents as multiple chemotherapy. For example the administration of 5-FU (antimetabolite) and Leucovorin (ancillary drug) is coded to single agent (Code 02).
6. Assign **code 82** when the physician would have recommended chemotherapy but did not due to patient risk factors, such as:
  - a. Advanced **age**.
  - b. **Comorbid** condition(s) (heart disease, kidney failure, other cancer, etc.).
7. Assign **code 99**
  - a. When there is no documentation that chemotherapy was recommended or performed.
  - b. Death certificate only.



**HORMONE THERAPY**

**Item Length: 2**  
**NAACCR Item #: 1400**  
**NAACCR Name: RX Summ--Hormone**

The data item Hormone Therapy records therapy administered as first course treatment that affects cancer tissue by changing the patient's hormone balance. See SEER\*RX for hormone therapy drug codes. Hormones may be divided into three categories:

1. Hormones.
2. Antihormones.
3. Adrenocorticotrophic agents

**Codes**

- 00 None, hormone therapy was not part of the planned first course of therapy; not usually administered for this type and/or stage of cancer; diagnosed at autopsy only.
- 01 Hormone therapy administered as first course therapy.
- 82 Hormone therapy was not recommended/administered because it was contra indicated due to patient risk factors (comorbid conditions, advanced age, etc.).
- 85 Hormone therapy was not administered because the patient died prior to planned or recommended therapy.
- 86 Hormone therapy was not administered. It was recommended by the patient's physician, but was not administered as part of the first course of therapy. No reason was stated in the patient record.
- 87 Hormone therapy was not administered. It was recommended by the patient's physician, but this treatment was refused by the patient, a patient's family member, or the patient's guardian. The refusal was noted in the patient record.
- 88 Hormone therapy was recommended, but it is unknown if it was administered.
- 99 It is unknown whether a hormonal agent(s) was recommended or administered. Death certificate only.

**Coding Instructions**

1. Assign **code 00** when
  - a. There is no information in the patient's medical record about hormone therapy AND
    - i. It is known that hormone therapy is not usually performed for this type and/or stage of cancer OR
    - ii. There is no reason to suspect that the patient would have had hormone therapy
  - b. If the treatment plan offered multiple treatment options and the patient selected treatment that did not include hormone therapy
  - c. Patient elects to pursue no treatment following the discussion of hormone therapy treatment. Discussion does not equal a recommendation.
  - d. Only information available is that the patient was referred to an oncologist. Referral does not equal a recommendation.

- e. Watchful waiting (prostate)
  - f. Patient diagnosed at autopsy
2. Assign **code 99**
- a. When there is no documentation that hormone therapy was recommended or performed
  - b. Death certificate only.
3. Some types of cancer **thrive and proliferate because of hormones** (estrogen, progesterone and testosterone) that naturally occur in the body. These types of cancer may be treated by an **antihormone** or by the surgical removal/radiation of the organ(s) that produce the hormone, such as the testes and ovaries. **Surgical removal of organs** for hormone manipulation is not coded in this data item. Code these procedures in the data field Hematologic Transplant and Endocrine Procedures.
4. Other types of cancers are **slowed or suppressed by hormones**. These cancers are treated by administering hormones.

***Example 1:*** Endometrial cancer may be treated with progesterone. Code all administration of progesterone to patients with endometrial cancer in this field. Even if the progesterone is given for menopausal symptoms, it has an effect on the growth or recurrence of endometrial cancer.

***Example 2:*** **Follicular** and **papillary** cancers of the **thyroid** are often treated with thyroid hormone to suppress serum thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH). If a patient with papillary and/or follicular cancer of the thyroid is given a thyroid hormone, code the treatment in this field.

5. Code the hormonal agent given as part of combination chemotherapy, e.g. MOPP, COPP whether it affects the cancer cells or not.

## IMMUNOTHERAPY

Item Length: 2  
NAACCR Item #: 1410  
NAACCR Name: RX Summ--BRM

The data item Immunotherapy records immunotherapeutic (biological therapy, biotherapy or biological response modifier) agents administered as first course of therapy. See SEER\*RX for immunotherapy codes.

Immunotherapy **uses** the body's **immune system**, either directly or indirectly, to fight cancer or to lessen the side effects that may be caused by some cancer treatments. Record only those treatments that are administered to affect the cancer cells.

Immunotherapy is **designed** to:

1. Make **cancer cells** more **recognizable** and therefore more **susceptible** to destruction by the immune system.
2. **Boost** the killing power of **immune** system cells, such as T-cells, NK-cells, and macrophages.
3. **Alter** cancer cells' **growth patterns** of cancer cells to promote behavior like that of healthy cells.
4. **Block** or **reverse** the process that **changes** a normal cell or a pre-cancerous cell into a cancerous cell.
5. **Enhance** the body's ability to **repair** or **replace** normal cells damaged or destroyed by other forms of cancer treatment, such as chemotherapy or radiation.
6. **Prevent** cancer cells from **spreading** to other parts of the body.

## Codes

- 00 None, immunotherapy was not part of the planned first course of therapy; not customary therapy for this cancer; diagnosed at autopsy only.
- 01 Immunotherapy was administered as first course therapy.
- 82 Immunotherapy was not recommended/administered because it was contraindicated due to patient risk factors (comorbid conditions, advanced age etc.).
- 85 Immunotherapy was not administered because the patient died prior to planned or recommended therapy.
- 86 Immunotherapy was not administered; it was recommended by the patient's physician, but was not administered as part of the first-course of therapy. No reason was noted in the patient's record.
- 87 Immunotherapy was not administered. It was recommended by the patient's physician, but this treatment was refused by the patient, a patient's family member, or the patient's guardian. The refusal was noted in the patient record.
- 88 Immunotherapy was recommended, but it is unknown if it was administered.
- 99 It is unknown if immunotherapy was recommended or administered because it is not stated in patient record; death certificate only cases.

## Definitions

### Types of immunotherapy

**Cancer Vaccines:** Cancer vaccines are still in the experimental phase and are not coded in this data item. They may be coded in the field Other Therapy. Currently clinical trials use cancer vaccines for brain, breast, colon, kidney, lung, melanoma and ovary.

**Interferons:** Interferons belong to a group of proteins called cytokines. They are produced naturally by the white blood cells in the body. Interferon-alpha is able to slow tumor growth directly as well as activate the immune system. It is used for a number of cancers including multiple myeloma, chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML), hairy cell leukemia, and malignant melanoma.

**Interleukins (IL-2)** are often used to treat kidney cancer and melanoma.

**Monoclonal Antibodies:** Monoclonal antibodies (Mab) are produced in a laboratory. The artificial antibodies are used in a variety of ways in systemic therapy. Some are injected into the patient to seek out and disrupt cancer cell activities. When the monoclonal antibody disrupts tumor growth, it is coded as chemotherapy. Other Mabs are linked to radioisotopes (conjugated monoclonal antibodies). The Mab finds and attaches to the target tumor cells and brings with it the radioisotope that actually kills the tumor cell. The monoclonal antibody itself does nothing to enhance the immune system. Conjugated monoclonal antibodies such as tositumomab (Bexxar) or ibritumomab (Zevalin) are coded to the part of the drug that actually kills the cells, usually radioisotopes. A third function of Mabs is to enhance the immune response against the cancer, either by identifying tumor cells that are mimicking normal cells, or by boosting the body's natural defenses that destroy foreign cells. Consult SEER\*Rx at <http://seer.cancer.gov/tools/seerrx/index.html> for the treatment category in which each monoclonal antibody should be coded.

### Coding Instructions

1. Assign **code 00**
  - a. When there is no information in the patient's medical record about immunotherapy AND
    - i. It is known that radiation is not usually performed for this type and/or stage of cancer  
OR
    - ii. There is no reason to suspect that the patient would have had immunotherapy.
  - b. If the treatment plan offered multiple treatment options and the patient selected treatment that did not include immunotherapy.
  - c. Patient elects to pursue no treatment following the discussion of immunotherapy. Discussion does not equal a recommendation.
  - d. Only information available is that the patient was referred to an oncologist. Referral does not equal a recommendation.
  - e. Watchful waiting (prostate)
  - f. Patient diagnosed at autopsy

2. Assign **code 87**
  - a. If the patient refused recommended immunotherapy.
  - b. If the patient made a blanket refusal of all recommended treatment.
  - c. If the patient refused all treatment before any was recommended.
3. Assign **code 99**
  - a. When there is no documentation that immunotherapy was recommended or performed.
  - b. Death certificate only.

## HEMATOLOGIC TRANSPLANT AND ENDOCRINE PROCEDURES

Item Length: 2  
NAACCR Item #: 3250  
NAACCR Name: RX Summ--Transplnt/Endocr

This data item records systemic therapeutic procedure administered as part of the first course of treatment. These procedures include bone marrow transplants (BMT) and stem cell harvests with rescue (stem cell transplant), endocrine surgery and/or radiation performed for hormonal effect (when cancer originates at another site), as well as combination of transplants and endocrine therapy.

**Codes**

- 00 None, transplant procedure or endocrine therapy was not a part of the first course of therapy; not customary therapy for this cancer; diagnosed at autopsy only.
- 10 Bone marrow transplant, NOS. A bone marrow transplant procedure was administered as first course therapy, but the type was not specified.
  - 11 Bone marrow transplant autologous
  - 12 Bone marrow transplant allogeneic
- 20 Stem cell harvest (stem cell transplant) and infusion as first course therapy.
- 30 Endocrine surgery and/or endocrine radiation therapy as first course therapy.
- 40 Combination of transplant procedure with endocrine surgery and/or endocrine radiation (Code 30 in combination with 10, 11, 12, or 20) as first course therapy.
- 82 Transplant procedure and/or endocrine therapy was not recommended/administered because it was contraindicated due to patient risk factors (comorbid conditions, advanced age, etc.).
- 85 Transplant procedures and/or endocrine therapy were not administered because the patient died prior to planned or recommended therapy.
- 86 Transplant procedures and/or endocrine therapy were not administered; it was recommended by the patient's physician, but was not administered as part of first course therapy. No reason was noted in the patient record.
- 87 Transplant procedures and/or endocrine therapy were not administered; this treatment was recommended by the patient's physician but was refused by the patient, a patient's family member, or the patient's guardian. The refusal was noted in the patient record.
- 88 Transplant procedures and/or endocrine therapy was recommended, but it is unknown if it was administered.
- 99 It is unknown if a transplant procedure or endocrine therapy was recommended or administered because it is not stated in patient record; death certificate only cases.

**Definitions**

**Bone marrow transplant (BMT):** Procedure used to restore stem cells that were destroyed by chemotherapy and/or radiation. Replacing the stem cells allows the patient to undergo higher doses of chemotherapy.

**BMT Allogeneic:** Receives bone marrow or stem cells from a donor.

**BMT Autologous:** Uses the patient's own bone marrow and/or stem cells. The tumor cells are filtered out and the purified blood and stem cells are returned to the patient.

*Note:* Used for breast cancer, lymphoma, leukemia, aplastic anemia, myeloma, germ cell tumors, ovarian cancer, and small cell lung cancer.

**Conditioning:** High-dose chemotherapy with or without radiation administered prior to transplants such as BMT and stem cell to kill cancer cells. This conditioning also destroys normal bone marrow cells so the normal cells need to be replaced (rescue). The high dose chemotherapy is coded in the Chemotherapy field.

**Hematopoietic Growth Factors:** A group of substances that support hematopoietic (blood cell) colony formation. The group includes erythropoietin, interleukin-3, and colony-stimulating factors (CSFs). The growth-stimulating substances are ancillary drugs and not coded.

**Non-Myeloablative Therapy:** Uses immunosuppressive drugs pre- and post-transplant to ablate the bone marrow. These are not recorded as therapeutic agents.

**Peripheral Blood Stem Cell Transplantation (PBSCT):** Rescue that replaces stem cells after conditioning.

**Rescue:** Rescue is the actual BMT or stem cell transplant done after conditioning.

**Stem Cells:** Immature cells found in bone marrow, blood stream and umbilical cords. The stem cells mature into blood cells.

### Coding Instructions

1. Assign **code 00**
  - a. When there is no information in the patient's medical record about transplant procedure or endocrine therapy AND
    - i. It is known that transplant procedure or endocrine therapy is not usually performed for this type and/or stage of cancer OR
    - ii. There is no reason to suspect that the patient would have had transplant procedure or endocrine therapy.
  - b. If the treatment plan offered multiple treatment options and the patient selected treatment that did not include transplant procedure or endocrine therapy.
  - c. Patient elects to pursue no treatment following the discussion of transplant procedure or endocrine therapy. Discussion does not equal a recommendation.
  - d. Only information available is that the patient was referred to an oncologist. Referral does not equal a recommendation.
  - e. Watchful waiting (CLL)
  - f. Patient diagnosed at autopsy
2. Assign **code 10** if the patient has "mixed chimera transplant (mini-transplant or non-myeloablative transplant). These transplants are a mixture of the patient's cells and donor cells.
3. **Codes 11 and 12** have priority over code 10 (BMT, NOS).
4. Assign **code 12** (allogeneic) for a syngeneic bone marrow transplant (from an identical twin) or for a transplant from any person other than the patient.

5. Assign **code 20** when the patient has a stem cell harvest followed by a rescue or reinfusion (stem cell transplant). If the patient does not have a rescue, code the stem cell harvest as 88, recommended, unknown if administered.
6. Assign **code 30** for endocrine radiation and/or surgery. Endocrine organs are testes and ovaries. Endocrine radiation and/or surgical procedures must be bilateral, or must remove the remaining paired organ for hormonal effect.
7. Assign **code 87**
  - a. If the patient **refused** recommended transplant or endocrine procedure.
  - b. If the patient made a **blanket refusal** of all recommended treatment.
  - c. If the patient **refused all treatment** before any was recommended.
8. Assign **code 99**
  - a. When there is no documentation that transplant procedure or endocrine therapy was recommended or performed.
  - b. Death certificate only.



SYSTEMIC TREATMENT/SURGERY SEQUENCE

Item Length: 1  
 NAACCR Item #: 1639  
 NAACCR Name: RX SUMM-Systemic/SurSeq

Records the sequence of any systemic therapy and surgery given as first course of therapy.

Systemic therapy:

- Chemotherapy
- Hormone therapy
- Biological response therapy/immunotherapy
- Bone marrow transplant
- Stem cell harvests
- Surgical and/or radiation endocrine therapy

Code	Label	Definition
0	No systemic therapy and/or surgical treatment	The patient did not have both systemic therapy and surgery.
2	Systemic therapy before surgery	The patient had systemic therapy prior to surgery and no systemic therapy was given after surgery.
3	Systemic therapy after surgery	The patient had systemic therapy after surgery and no systemic therapy was given prior to surgery.
4	Systemic therapy both before and after surgery	Systemic therapy was administered prior to surgery and also after surgery.
5	Intraoperative systemic therapy	The patient had intraoperative systemic therapy.
6	Intraoperative systemic therapy with other therapy administered before or after surgery	The patient had intraoperative systemic therapy and also had systemic therapy before and/or after surgery. <i>Note:</i> The systemic therapy administered before or after surgery does not have to be the same type as the intraoperative systemic therapy.
9	Sequence unknown	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The patient had systemic therapy and also had surgery.</li> <li>• It is unknown whether the systemic therapy was administered prior to surgery, after surgery, or intraoperatively.</li> </ul>

**OTHER THERAPY**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 1420**  
**NAACCR Name: RX Summ—Other**

Other Therapy identifies other treatment given that cannot be classified as surgery, radiation, systemic therapy, or ancillary treatment.

**Codes**

- 0 None
- 1 Other
- 2 Other-Experimental
- 3 Other-Double Blind
- 6 Other-Unproven
- 7 Refusal
- 8 Recommended, unknown if administered
- 9 Unknown

**Coding Instructions**

1. Assign **Code 0** when
  - a. There is no information in the patient's medical record about other therapy AND
    - i. It is known that other therapy is not usually performed for this type and/or stage of cancer  
OR
    - ii. There is no reason to suspect that the patient would have had other therapy.
  - b. If the treatment plan offered multiple treatment options and the patient selected treatment that did not include other therapy.
  - c. Patient elects to pursue no treatment following the discussion of other therapy. Discussion does not equal a recommendation.
  - d. Only information available is that the patient was referred for consideration of other therapy. Referral does not equal a recommendation.
  - e. Patient diagnosed at autopsy.
2. Assign **code 1**
  - a. Hematopoietic treatments such as: phlebotomy, transfusions, or aspirin.
  - b. Patient had cancer treatment that could not be assigned to the previous treatment fields (surgery, radiation, chemotherapy, immunotherapy, or systemic therapy).
3. Assign **code 2** for any experimental or newly developed treatment that differs greatly from proven types of cancer therapy such as a clinical trial.

*Note:* Hyperbaric oxygen has been used to treat cancer in clinical trials, but it is also used to promote tissue healing following head and neck surgeries. Do not code the administration of hyperbaric oxygen to promote healing as an experimental treatment.

4. Assign **code 3** when the patient is enrolled in a double blind clinical trial. When the trial is complete and the code is broken, review and recode the therapy.
5. Assign **code 6** for **unconventional** methods whether they are the single therapy or given in combination with conventional therapy. Use **code 6** for **alternative** therapy ONLY if the patient receives no other type of treatment.
6. Assign **code 8** When other therapy was recommended by the physician but there is no information that the treatment was given.
7. Assign **code 9**
  - a. When there is no documentation that other therapy was recommended or performed
  - b. Death certificate only.

The following explanations and definitions are quoted from the website for the National Center for Complimentary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM). Complementary and alternative medicine, as defined by NCCAM, is a group of diverse medical and health care systems, practices, and products that are not presently considered to be part of conventional medicine. While some scientific evidence exists regarding some CAM therapies, for most there are key questions that are yet to be answered through well-designed scientific studies--questions such as whether they are safe and whether they work for the diseases or medical conditions for which they are used.

- **Complementary** medicine is used **together with** conventional medicine. An example of a complementary therapy is using aromatherapy to help lessen a patient's discomfort following surgery.
- **Alternative** medicine is used **in place of** conventional medicine. An example of an alternative therapy is using a special diet to treat cancer instead of undergoing surgery, radiation, or chemotherapy that has been recommended by a conventional doctor.

See complete information on types of complementary and alternative medicine at <http://nccam.nih.gov/health/whatisacam/>

This page left blank

**SECTION VII  
FOLLOW UP INFORMATION**

**This page left blank**

**DATE OF LAST FOLLOW UP OR OF DEATH**

**Item Length: 8**  
**NAACCR Item #: 1750**  
**NAACCR Name: Date of Last Contact**

SEER requires the registries to update the follow up information on all cases on an annual basis. The exception is carcinoma in situ of the cervix diagnosed on or after 1/1/1996. This data item records the date of last follow up or the date of death.

Date fields are recorded in the month, day, century, year format (MMDDCCYY) with 99 for unknown day or month and 9999 for unknown year.

SEER registries collect the month, day, and year of last follow up or of death. The third and fourth digits (day) are recoded to 99 when the data are transmitted to SEER.

**Codes for Month**

01	January
02	February
03	March
04	April
05	May
06	June
07	July
08	August
09	September
10	October
11	November
12	December
99	Unknown month

**Codes for Day**

01	
02	
03	
..	
..	
31	
99	Unknown day

**Codes for Year**

Code the four-digit year of follow up or death  
Record 9999 for unknown year

**Special Codes**

99999999 Unknown date

**Coding instructions**

1. Code the date the patient was actually seen by the physician or contacted by the hospital registry as the follow up date. Do not code the date the follow up report was received.
2. Do not change the follow up date unless new information is available.
3. The field is associated with the patient, not the cancer, so all records (primary sites) for the same patient will have the same follow up date.



**VITAL STATUS**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 1760**  
**NAACCR Name: Vital Status**

SEER requires the registries to update the follow up information on all cases on an annual basis. The exception is carcinoma in situ of the cervix diagnosed on or after 1/1/1996. This field records the vital status of the patient on the date of last follow up.

If the patient has multiple records, the vital status must be identical on each record.

**Codes**

- 1 Alive
- 4 Dead

The field is associated with the patient, not the cancer, so if the patient has multiple tumors, vital status should be the same for all tumors.

**ICD CODE REVISION USED FOR CAUSE OF DEATH**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 1920**  
**NAACCR Name: ICD Revision Number**

SEER requires the registries to update the follow up information on all cases on an annual basis. The exception is carcinoma in situ of the cervix diagnosed on or after 1/1/1996. Shows the revision of the International Classification of Diseases (ICD) used to code the underlying cause of death.

If the patient has multiple records, the ICD Code Revision Used for Cause of Death must be identical on each record.

**Codes**

- 0 Patient alive at last follow up
- 1 ICD-10 (1999+ deaths)
- 7 ICD-7
- 8 ICDA-8
- 9 ICD-9

UNDERLYING CAUSE OF DEATH

Item Length: 4  
 NAACCR Item #: 1910  
 NAACCR Name: Cause of Death

This is the official underlying cause of death coded from the death certificate using ICD-7, ICDA-8, ICD-9, or ICD-10 codes.

**Special Codes**

- 0000 Patient alive at last contact
- 7777 State death certificate or listing not available
- 7797 State death certificate or listing available, but underlying cause of death not coded

**Coding Instructions for ICD-10**

1. Use the underlying cause of death as coded by a State Health Department even if the code seems to be in error.
2. Report the coded underlying cause of death code from another source such as NDI plus or state data exchange if the coded death certificate is not available.
3. If the coded underlying cause of death code is not on the death certificate and is not available from other sources, code 7797.
4. If neither the death certificate nor the coded underlying cause of death is available, code 7777.

*Example:* Medical doctor states patient died, but death certificate not available (not on state death file, not available through federal or state agencies), code 7777.

5. Ignore (do not record) decimal points when copying codes.
6. The cause of death code is commonly four characters. Ignore (do not code) a fifth character if present.
7. Left justify the codes; if less than four characters, left justify and add a 9 to the right.
8. If the underlying cause of death code is not available, do not attempt to code the underlying cause of death unless you have a trained ICD-10 nosologist on staff or on consult.

Beginning for deaths in 1999, the United States agreed to code all deaths using the *International Statistical Classification of Diseases and Related Health Problems, Tenth Revision* (ICD-10). The ICD-10 codes have up to four characters: a letter followed by 2 or 3 digits.

**Examples:**

Underlying Cause of Death	ICD-10	SEER Code
Malignant neoplasm of the thyroid	C73	C739
Acute appendicitis with peritonitis	K35.0	K350
Malignant neoplasm of stomach	C16.9	C169

If the patient has multiple records, the underlying cause of death must be identical on each record.

**TYPE OF FOLLOW UP**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 2180**  
**NAACCR Name: SEER Type of Follow up**

Codes for the type of follow up expected for a SEER case.

**Codes**

- 1 “Autopsy Only” or “Death Certificate Only” case
- 2 Active follow up case
- 3 In situ cancer of the cervix uteri only
- 4 Case not originally in active follow up, but in active follow up now (San Francisco-Oakland only)

**Coding Instructions**

1. All cases other than in situ cancers of the cervix uteri must be followed annually, including benign and borderline intracranial and CNS tumors diagnosed 1/1/2004 and forward.
2. If information is received on a person with an in situ cancer of the cervix diagnosed before 1/1/1996, the follow up information should be updated.
3. Cases of in situ cancer of the cervix diagnosed on or after 1/1/1996 are not reportable; follow up is not required.

**SECTION VIII  
ADMINISTRATIVE CODES**

Each calendar year the SEER participants submit records to NCI for all persons/cancers diagnosed since the participant started reporting. Many of these records have been updated with information received by the participant since the prior data submission. NCI edits the information to ensure correctness and comparability of reporting. Some of these edits identify conditions that require additional review. To eliminate the need to review the same cases each submission, the Administrative Codes section contains a set of indicators used to show that the information on a record has already been reviewed.

This page left blank

**SITE/TYPE INTERFIELD REVIEW**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 2030**  
**NAACCR Name: Over-Ride Site/Type**

**Site/Type Interfield Review (Interfield Edit 25)**

**Codes**

blank	Not reviewed or reviewed and corrected
1	Reviewed: The coding of an unusual combination of primary site and histologic type has been reviewed.

**HISTOLOGY/BEHAVIOR INTERFIELD REVIEW**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 2040**  
**NAACCR Name: Over-Ride Histology**

**Histology/Behavior Interfield Review (Field Item Edit Morph)**

**Codes**

- blank Not reviewed or reviewed and corrected
- 1 Reviewed: The behavior code of the histology is designated as “benign” or “uncertain” in ICD- O-2 or ICD-O-3, and the pathologist states the primary to be “in situ” or “malignant” (flag for a “Morphology Type & Behavior” edit).
- 2 Reviewed: The behavior is in situ, but the tumor is not microscopically confirmed (flag for a “Diagnostic Confirmation, Behavior Code” edit).
- 3 Reviewed: Both conditions 1 and 2 above apply.



**AGE/SITE/HISTOLOGY INTERFIELD REVIEW**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 1990**  
**NAACCR Name: Over-Ride Age/Site/Morph**

**Age/Site/Histology Interfield Review (Interfield Edit 15)**

**Codes**

- blank Not reviewed or reviewed and corrected
- 1 Reviewed: An unusual occurrence of a particular site/histology combination for a given age group has been reviewed.
- 2 Reviewed: Case was diagnosed in utero.
- 3 Reviewed: Conditions 1 and 2 above both apply

**SEQUENCE NUMBER/DIAGNOSTIC CONFIRMATION INTERFIELD REVIEW**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 2000**  
**NAACCR Name: Over-ride SeqNo/DxConf**

**Sequence Number/Diagnostic Confirmation Interfield Review (Interfield Edit 23)**

**Codes**

blank	Not reviewed or reviewed and corrected
1	Reviewed: Multiple primaries of special sites in which at least one diagnosis has not been microscopically confirmed have been reviewed.

**SITE/HISTOLOGY/LATERALITY/SEQUENCE INTERRECORD REVIEW**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 2010**  
**NAACCR Name: Over-Ride Site/Lat/SeqNo**

**Site/Histology/Laterality/Sequence Number Interrecord Review (Interrecord Edit 09)**

**Codes**

blank Not reviewed or reviewed and corrected  
1 Reviewed: Multiple primaries of the same histology (3 digit) in the same primary site group have been reviewed.

**SURGERY/DIAGNOSTIC CONFIRMATION INTERFIELD REVIEW**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 2020**  
**NAACCR Name: Over-Ride Surg/DxConf**

**Surgery/Diagnostic Confirmation Interfield Review (Interfield Edit 46)**

**Codes**

blank	Not reviewed or reviewed and corrected
1	Reviewed: A patient who had (cancer-directed) surgery, but the tissue removed was not sufficient for microscopic confirmation.

**TYPE OF REPORTING SOURCE/SEQUENCE NUMBER INTERFIELD REVIEW**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 2050**  
**NAACCR Name: Over-Ride Report Source**

**Type of Reporting Source/Sequence Number Interfield Review (Interfield Edit 04)**

**Codes**

blank	Not reviewed or reviewed and corrected
1	Reviewed: A second or subsequent primary with a reporting source of death certificate only has been reviewed and is indeed an independent primary.

**SEQUENCE NUMBER/ILL-DEFINED SITE INTERFIELD REVIEW**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 2060**  
**NAACCR Name: Over-Ride Ill-define Site**

**Sequence Number/Ill-defined Site Interfield Review (Interfield Edit 22)**

**Codes**

blank Not reviewed or reviewed and corrected  
1 Reviewed: A second or subsequent primary reported with an ill-defined primary site (C76.0-C76.8, C80.9) has been reviewed and is an independent primary.

**LEUKEMIA OR LYMPHOMA/DIAGNOSTIC CONFIRMATION INTERFIELD REVIEW**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 2070**  
**NAACCR Name: Over-Ride Leuk, Lymphoma**

**Lymphoma/Diagnostic Confirmation Interfield Review (Interfield Edit 48)**

**Codes**

blank	Not reviewed or reviewed and corrected
1	Reviewed: A patient was diagnosed with leukemia or lymphoma and the diagnosis was not microscopically confirmed.

**OVER-RIDE FLAG FOR SITE/BEHAVIOR (IF39)**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 2071**  
**NAACCR Name: Over-Ride Site/Behavior**

**Over-ride Flag for Site/Behavior (Interfield Edit 39)**

**Codes**

blank	Not reviewed or reviewed and corrected
1	Reviewed: A patient has an in situ cancer of a nonspecific site and no further information about the primary site is available.

The IF39 edit does not allow in situ cases of nonspecific sites, such as gastrointestinal tract, NOS; uterus, NOS; female genital tract, NOS; male genital organs, NOS; and others. This over-ride indicates that the conflict has been reviewed.

This was a new over-ride flag in the third edition of the code manual, but the flag may be applied to cases from any year.



**OVER-RIDE FLAG FOR SITE/EOD/DIAGNOSIS DATE (IF40)**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 2072**  
**NAACCR Name: Over-Ride Site/EOD/DX Dt**

**Over-ride Flag for Site/EOD/Diagnosis Date (Interfield Edit 40)**

**Codes**

blank Not reviewed or reviewed and corrected  
1 Reviewed: A patient had “localized” disease with a non-specific site and no further information about the primary site is available.

The IF40 edit does not allow “localized” disease with non-specific sites, such as mouth, NOS; colon, NOS (except histology 8220); bone, NOS; female genital system, NOS; male genital organs, NOS; and others. This over-ride indicates that the conflict has been reviewed.

This was a new over-ride flag in the third edition of the code manual, but the flag may be applied to cases from any year.

**OVER-RIDE FLAG FOR SITE/LATERALITY/EOD (IF41)**

**Item Length: 1**

**NAACCR Item #: 2073**

**NAACCR Name: Over-Ride Site/Lat/EOD**

**Over-ride Flag for Site/Laterality/EOD (Interfield Edit 41)**

**Codes**

blank Not reviewed or reviewed and corrected

1 Reviewed: A patient had laterality coded non-specifically and EOD coded specifically.

The IF41 edit for paired organs does not allow EOD to be specified as in situ, localized, or regional by direct extension if laterality is coded as “bilateral, side unknown” or “laterality unknown.” This over-ride indicates that the conflict has been reviewed.

This was a new over-ride flag in the third edition of the code manual, but the flag may be applied to cases from any year.

**OVER-RIDE FLAG FOR SITE/LATERALITY/MORPHOLOGY (IF42)**

**Item Length: 1**  
**NAACCR Item #: 2074**  
**NAACCR Name: Over-Ride Site/Lat/Morph**

**Over-ride Flag for Site/Laterality/Morphology (Interfield Edit 42)**

**Codes**

blank Not reviewed or reviewed and corrected  
1 Reviewed: A patient had behavior code of “in situ” and laterality is not stated as right: origin of primary; left: origin of primary; or only one side involved, right or left origin not specified.

The IF42 edit does not allow behavior code of “in situ” with non-specific laterality codes. This over-ride indicates that the conflict has been reviewed.

This was a new over-ride flag in the third edition of the code manual, but the flag may be applied to cases from any year.

This page left blank